

Giving Shape to Ideas



bizhub c754/c654

User's Guide Print Operations

Table of contents

1 Printer Functions

1.1	Overview	1-3
1.2	System environment requirements	1-4
1.3	Cable connection locations on this machine	1-5

2 Printing in the Windows Environment

2.1	Preparation for Printing (Network Connection)	2-3
2.1.1	Overview	2-3
2.1.2	Before Installing the Printer Driver (For Administrators)	2-3
	Preparation flow	
	Checking the LAN cable connection	
	Checking the network settings	
	Configuring the network printing environment	
	Allowing device information to be acquired from the printer driver	
2.1.3	Easy installation process of the printer driver	
	Installation flow	
	Checking the printer driver type	
	Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver	
2.1.4	Configuring the default settings of the printer driver	
	Configuring the optional environment of this machine	
	Changing the default print settings	
2.2	Preparation for Printing (USB Connection)	2-10
2.2.1	Overview	2-10
2.2.2	Easy installation process of the printer driver	2-10
	Installation flow	
	Checking the printer driver type	
	Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver	
	Changing the installation settings (Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2)	
	Installation procedure	
2.2.3	Configuring the default settings of the printer driver	
	Configuring the optional environment of this machine Changing the default print settings	
2.3	Printing procedure	
2.3.1	Printing operation flow	
2.3.2	Easily recalling frequently used print settings	
	Registering frequently used print settings	
	Customizing the setting window	
2.4	Useful printing functions	
2.4.1	Changing the paper size or type	
	Enlarging or reducing to the paper size ([Paper Size])	
	Enlarging or reducing by the desired zoom ratio ([Zoom]) Printing on custom size paper ([Original Size])	
	Specifying the paper type ([Paper Type])	
	Specifying the paper tray ([Paper Tray])	
	Printing on postcards	
	Printing on paper in multiple trays ([Carbon Copy])	
2.4.2	Printing multiple sets of copies	2-27
2.1.2	Specifying the number of copies ([Copies])	
	Printing by sets ([Collate]/[Offset])	
2.4.3	Saving the number of printed sheets	2-29
	Printing multiple pages on the same side of a single sheet ([Combination])	
	Printing on both sides of paper ([2-Sided])	
	Skipping blank pages ([Skip Blank Pages])	2-31

2.4.4	Binding printed sheets Adding margin on pages ([Binding Margin]) Staple papers ([Staple])	2-32
	Binding in the center of the paper ([Center Staple and Fold]) Punching the printed sheets ([Punch])	2-34
	Folding papers ([Fold])	
	Printing in a booklet format ([Booklet])	
	Specifying the output tray ([Output Tray])	2-37
2.4.5	Adjusting the layout	2-38
	Printing a poster-sized image ([Combination]) (PCL only)	
	Rotating the image 180 degrees ([Rotate 180])	
	Fine-tuning the print position ([Image Shift])	
2.4.6	Adding text or an image to the original Adding a watermark ([Watermark])	
	Registering/editing a watermark	
	Composing an overlay image ([Overlay])	
	Creating an overlay image in the computer	
	Creating an overlay image in a shared folder	2-46
	Adding the print date/time or page number ([Date/Time]/[Page Number])	
	Add information to header/footer ([Header/Footer])	
2.4.7	Deterring unauthorized copying	2-50
	Printing a concealed security watermark ([Copy Protect])	
	Printing a stamp on the entire page ([Stamp Repeat])	
	Add copy restriction information ([Copy Guard]) Add a password ([Password Copy])	
	Configuring the print settings for Copy Security	
0.4.0		
2.4.8	Inserting paper into the original Inserting front and back covers ([Front Cover]/[Back Cover])	2-55
	Inserting front and back covers ([Front Cover from Post Inserter]/	2-00
	[Back Cover from Post Inserter])	2-56
	Inserting paper between transparencies ([Transparency Interleave])	
	Inserting paper into the specified pages ([Per Page Setting])	2-58
2.4.9	Specifying the color and image quality	
	Selecting colors for printing ([Select Color])	
	Fine-tuning the image quality according to the original ([Quality Adjustment])	
	Selecting the optimum color representation for the original ([Color Settings]) Specifying the graphic pattern density ([Pattern]) (PCL/XPS only)	
	Specifying the compression ratio of graphic images ([Image Compression]) (PCL only)	
	Making the image glossy ([Glossy Mode])	
	Preventing the generation of white space around images ([Auto Trapping]/	
	[Black Over Print]) (PS only)	
	Saving toner ([Toner Save])	
	Sharpening the border between text etc. ([Edge Enhancement])	
	Specifying font processing ([Font Settings]) (PCL/PS only) Preventing failure in printing thin lines ([Thin Line Support]) (PCL only)	
	Convert colors according to the RGB values of the original. ([Convert to Gray Scale])	2-07
	(PCL only)	2-67
2.4.10	Using ICC Profiles (PS Only)	2-68
	Specifying the ICC profiles for printing	2-68
	Adding ICC profiles to the printer driver	2-69
2.4.11	Printing Microsoft Excel/PowerPoint data	
	Printing multiple Excel sheets at one time (in 32-bit system environment only)	2-70
	Composing and printing an image correctly in PowerPoint (for PCL/XPS in 32-bit system environment only)	2_71
2.4.12	Previewing the Print Image (XPS only)	
2.4.12 2.5	Previewing the Print Image (XPS only)	
2.5 2.5.1	Making a Trial Printing ([Proof Print])	
2.0.1	Proof Print	
	How to print from the computer	
	Operations on this machine	2-74

2.5.2	Printing Highly Confidential Documents ([Secure Print]) Secure Print	2-75
	How to print from the computer Operations on this machine	
2.5.3	Saving originals in the Box on this machine ([Save in User Box])	
2.0.0	Save in User Box	2-77
	Operations required to use this function	
	How to print from the computer	
	Using data saved in a box	
2.5.4	Attaching authentication information	
	Printing when authentication is set Operations required to use this function	
	How to print from the computer	
2.5.5	Printing at the Same Time as Authentication (ID & Print)	
2.0.0	ID & Print	
	How to print from the computer	
	Operations on this machine	
	Operations on this machine (when an Authentication Unit is used)	
2.5.6	Printing in the Single sign-on environment of Active Directory	
	Single sign-on Operations required to use this function	
	Printing procedure	
2.5.7	Printing on banner paper	
2.017	Printing on banner paper	
	Printable paper	
	How to print on banner paper	
2.5.8	Changing the encryption passphrase	
	Encryption Passphrase Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	
	Setting the printer driver	
	Printing procedure	
2.5.9	Printing using the PPD driver for applications	2-93
	PPD driver for applications	
	Printing procedure	2-93
2.6	Setting items in the printer driver	
2.6.1	[Properties] Window of the printer driver	
	How to display the [Properties] window Tabs provided by Windows	
0.0.0		
2.6.2 2.6.3	Available operations in the [Configure] tab	
	Available operations in the [Settings] tab [Printing Preferences] window of the printer driver	
2.6.4	How to display the [Printing Preferences] window	
	Items common to each tab	
2.6.5	Available operations in [My Tab]	2-100
2.6.6	Available operations in the [Basic] tab	
2.6.7	Available operations in the [Layout] tab	
2.6.8	Available operations in the [Finish] tab	2-104
2.6.9	Available operations in the [Cover Mode] tab	2-105
2.6.10	Available operations in the [Stamp/Composition] tab	2-106
2.6.11	Available operations in the [Quality] tab	2-108
2.6.12	Available operations in the [Other] tab	2-110
2.7	Deleting the printer driver	
	Deletion using the deletion program	
	Deletion using the installer	
2.8	Appendix: Manual installation process of the printer driver	
2.8.1	Checking the connection method In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2	
	In Windows XP/Server 2003	

2.8.2	Installation using an LPR/Port 9100 connection Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	
	In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2	
	In Windows XP/Server 2003	
2.8.3	Installation using a SMB connection	
	Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	
	In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2	
	In Windows XP/Windows 2003	2-119
2.8.4	Installation Using an IPP/IPPS Connection	2-121
2.0.1	Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	2-121
	In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2	
	In Windows XP/Server 2003	
2.8.5	Installation using a Web service connection	
	Web service	
	Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	
	Installation methods	
2.8.6	Installation using a USB connection	2-125
2.0.0	In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2	2-125
	In Windows XP/Server 2003	
	Updating the printer driver	
2.8.7	Manually deleting the printer driver	

3 Printing in a Mac OS Environment

3-3 3-3 3-4 3-4 3-4 3-4 3-4 3-4
3-3 3-4 3-4 3-4 3-4
3-4 3-4 3-4 3-4
3-4 3-4 3-4
3-4 3-4
3-4
3-4
25
3-5 3-5
3-6
3-7
3-7 3-7
3-7
3-8
3-8
3-9
3-10
3-10
3-10
3-11
3-12
3-13
3-13
3-15
3-15
3-16
3-17
3-18
3-18
3-19
3-20
3-21 3-22
3-22

3.3.5	Adjusting the layout Printing a poster-sized image ([Poster Mode:]) Rotating the image 180 degrees ([Rotate 180])	3-23
	Fine-tuning the print position ([Image Shift])	
3.3.6	Adding text or an image to the original Add the date and time ([Date/Time])	
	Adding a page number ([Page Number])	3-27
	Add information to header/footer ([Header/Footer])	
3.3.7	Deterring unauthorized copying Adding a concealed security watermark ([Copy Protect])	
	Printing a stamp on the entire page ([Stamp Repeat])	3-30
	Add copy restriction information ([Copy Guard]) Add a password ([Password Copy])	
	Configuring the print settings for Copy Security	
3.3.8	Inserting paper into the original	
	Inserting front/back covers ([Front Cover:]/[Back Cover:]) Inserting front/back covers ([Front Cover from Post Inserter]/	3-36
	[Back Cover from Post Inserter])	3-37
	Inserting paper between transparencies ([Transparency Interleave:])	
0.0.0	Inserting paper into the specified pages ([Per Page Setting:])	
3.3.9	Specifying the color and image quality Selecting colors for printing ([Select Color:])	
	Selecting the optimum color representation for the original ([Color Settings:])	3-42
	Making the image glossy ([Glossy Mode]) Preventing the generation of white space around images ([Auto Trapping]/	3-43
	[Black Over Print:])	
	Saving toner ([Toner Save])	
3.3.10	Increasing the legibility of small or faint text ([Edge Enhancement])	
3.3.10	Using ICC profiles Specifying the ICC profiles for printing	
	Adding ICC profiles to the printer driver	
3.4	Printing options	
3.4.1	Making a Trial Printing ([Proof Print]) Proof Print	
	How to print from the computer	
	Operations on this machine	
3.4.2	Printing Highly Confidential Documents ([Secure Print]) Secure Print	
	How to print from the computer	3-51
	Operations on this machine	
3.4.3	Saving print data in the Box on this machine ([Save in User Box]) Save in User Box	
	Operations required to use this function	
	How to print from the computer	
3.4.4	Using data saved in a box Attaching authentication information	
5.4.4	Printing when authentication is set	
	How to print from the computer	
3.4.5	Printing at the Same Time as Authentication ([ID&Print]) ID & Print	
	How to print from the computer	
	Operations on this machine	
246	Operations on this machine (when an authentication unit is used)	
3.4.6	Printing on hanner paper	0.04
0.4.0	Printing on banner paper Printing on banner paper	
0.4.0	Printing on banner paper Printable paper	3-61 3-61
	Printing on banner paper Printable paper How to print on banner paper	
3.4.7	Printing on banner paper Printable paper	
	Printing on banner paper Printable paper How to print on banner paper Changing the encryption passphrase Encryption Passphrase Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	
	Printing on banner paper Printable paper How to print on banner paper Changing the encryption passphrase Encryption Passphrase	

3.5	Setting items in the printer driver	3-68
3.5.1	[Page Setup] window of the printer driver	
	How to display the [Page Setup] window	
	Available operations in [Page Attributes]	
3.5.2	[Print] window of the printer driver	
	How to display the [Print] window	
	Items common to each window	
3.5.3	Available operations in [Copies & Pages]	
3.5.4	Available operations in [Output Method]	
3.5.5	Available operations in [Layout / Finish]	3-75
3.5.6	Available operations in [Paper Tray / Output Tray]	3-77
3.5.7	Available operations in [Cover Mode / Transparency Interleave]	3-78
3.5.8	Available operations in [Per Page Setting]	3-79
3.5.9	Available operations in [Stamp / Composition]	3-80
3.5.10	Available operations in [Quality]	3-80
3.6	Deleting the printer driver	3-82
3.7	Appendix: Using this machine with other connection methods	3-83
3.7.1	Using with an AppleTalk connection	3-83
	Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	3-83
	In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5	
	In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3	3-84
3.7.2	Using with an LPR connection	
	Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	
	In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6 In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3	
3.7.3	Using with an IPP connection Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	3-87
	In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6	
	In Mac OS X 10.3	
	In Mac OS X 10.2	
3.8	Appendix: Printing in a Mac OS 9.2 environment	3-90
3.8.1	Before Setting Up the Computer (For Administrators)	
	Preparation flow	
	Checking the LAN cable connection	
	Configuring the AppleTalk settings	
3.8.2	Setting up the computer	
	Setup flow	
	Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver	
	Installing the printer driver Setting the connection via AppleTalk	
0.0.0		
3.8.3	Configuring the default settings of the printer driver Configuring the optional environment of this machine	
	Changing the default print settings	
3.8.4	Printing procedure	
3.8.5	Setting items in the printer driver	
	Available operations in [Page Attributes]	
	Registering a custom paper size	3-95
	Available operations in [General]	
	Available operations in [Layout]	
	Available Operations with printer-specific functions (Finishing Options 1 to 6)	3-96

4 Printing in a NetWare Environment

4.1	Before using the printer	4-3
4.2	Operations required to use this function (For administrators)	4-4
4.3	Installing the printer driver	4-5

Printing	y without Using the Printer Driver	
5.1	Directly Printing from the PC (Direct Print) Direct Print Direct Print procedure	. 5-3
5.2	Directly printing from a USB memory device Printing from a USB memory device Supported USB memory devices Printing procedure	. 5-4 . 5-4
5.3	Directly printing from a Bluetooth device Printing from a Bluetooth device Supported Bluetooth devices Printing procedure	. 5-5 . 5-5

6 Description of Setup Buttons (User Settings)

5

[Utility]	6-3
[User Settings]	6-3
[Printer Settings]	6-4
[Basic Settings]	6-4
[Paper Setting]	6-5
[PCL Settings]	6-6
[PS Setting]	6-6
[Security Settings]	6-7
[OOXML Print Settings]	6-7
[Layout - Combination]	6-7
[Print Reports]	6-8
[TIFF Image Paper Setting]	6-8
[Banner Printing]	6-8

7 Description of Setup Buttons (Administrator Settings)

[Administrator Settings]	
[System Settings]	7-4
[Output Settings]	
[Print/Fax Output Settings]	
[Output Tray Settings]	
[Shift Output Each Job]	
[User Box Settings]	
[Delete Secure Print Documents]	
[Auto Delete Secure Document]	
[ID & Print Delete Time]	
[ID & Print Delete after Print Setting]	
[Stamp Settings]	
[Header/Footer Settings]	
[User Authentication/Account Track]	
[User Authentication Settings]	7-9
[Administrative Settings]	7-9
[User Name List]	7-10
[Default Function Permission]	
[ID & Print Settings]	7-10
[ID & Print Operation Settings]	7-10
[Default Operation Selection]	7-11
[Print without Authentication]	7-11
[Printer Settings]	7-11
[System Connection]	
[OpenAPI Settings]	
[Security Settings]	7-13
[Security Details]	7-14
[Print Data Capture]	7-14
[Secure Print Only]	7-15
[Copy Guard]	7-15
[Password Copy]	7-15
[Driver Password Encryption Setting]	7-15

8	Index		
	8.1	Index by item	8-3
	8.2	Index by button	8-5

Printer Functions

1 Printer Functions

1.1 Overview

The printer driver is software that specifies how to use the printing functions of this machine from other application software. When you install the printer driver on your computer, you can use a variety of this machine's printing functions. Furthermore, the printer driver supports a wide range of connection methods and provides flexibility in various environments.

It also supports direct printing, a printing method that does not use the printer driver, and printing from a USB memory device.



1.2 System environment requirements

For Windows

1

Item	Specifications
Operating system	The supported versions of the operating system vary depending on the in- stalled printer driver. For details, refer to page 2-6.
CPU	Any processor of the same or higher specifications as recommended for your operating system
Memory	Memory capacity as recommended for your operating system Sufficient available memory space is required for your operating system and the applications to be used.
Drive	DVD-ROM drive

For Macintosh

Item	Specifications
Operating system	Mac OS 9.2/OS X (10.2.8, 10.3, 10.4, 10.5, 10.6)
CPU	PowerPC, Intel Processor (Intel Processor must be Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6 only.)
Memory	Memory capacity as recommended for your operating system
Drive	DVD-ROM drive

1.3 Cable connection locations on this machine

The printer cables are connected to each port on this machine.



No.	Port	Description
1	Ethernet port (1000Base- T/100Base-TX/10Base-T)	Connect a LAN cable when using this machine in a network environment. It supports 1000Base-T, 100Base-TX, and 10Base-T standards. The TCP/IP (LPD/LPR, IPP, SMB), Web services, IPX (NetWare), AppleTalk (EtherTalk) and other protocols are supported.
2	USB port	Connect a USB cable when using this machine as a USB-con- nected device. Use type-A (4-pin, male) or type-B (4-pin, male) USB cables. A USB cable measuring three meters or less is recommended.



2 **Printing in the Windows Environment**

2.1 Preparation for Printing (Network Connection)

2.1.1 Overview

Before using this machine as a printer, you need to install the printer driver on your computer.

This section describes preparatory steps for printing from this machine using the installer that comes with this machine.



2.1.2 Before Installing the Printer Driver (For Administrators)

Preparation flow

In order to use this machine via network connection, you need to take preparatory steps on this machine before installing the printer driver.

- 1 Connecting this machine to the network
 - → Checking the LAN cable connection
 - → Checking the network settings

Check that this machine has had an IP address assigned to it.

2 Configuring the network printing environment

→ When using the Normal printing (at port 9100)

Make sure that the RAW port number has been set. (In normal circumstances, you can use the default settings.) Use Normal Printing (Port 9100) unless otherwise specified by the administrator.

→ When using the Internet Print (IPP)

→ When using the Secure Print (IPPS)

Configure the IPPS operating environment. Communication between this machine and the computer is encrypted with SSL.

3 Preparation finished.

Checking the LAN cable connection

Check that a LAN cable is connected to the LAN port of this machine.



Checking the network settings

Ensure that this machine has an IP address assigned to it. Tap [Utility] - [Device Information], and check that an IP address is displayed.

Reference

If no IP address is displayed, you need to configure the network. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

Configuring the network printing environment

Configure the operating environment for the printing method.

How to print If the printing method is not specified before installation, Normal Printing (Port 9100) is selected for printing. Use Normal Printing (Port 9100) unless otherwise specified by the administrator.

How to print	Description
Normal printing (Port 9100)	Make sure that the RAW port number has been set. (In normal circum- stances, you can use the default settings.) How to configure the setting is explained using Web Connection . For de- tails, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].
Internet Print (IPP)	Check the IPP operating environment. (In normal circumstances, you can use the default settings.) How to configure the setting is explained using Web Connection . For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].
Secure Print (IPPS)	Configure the IPPS operating environment. Communication between this machine and the computer is encrypted with SSL. How to configure the setting is explained using Web Connection . For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

Tips

- If you are using the Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, you cannot setup Secure Print (IPPS) using the installer.
- If you are using Windows XP/Server 2003 in an IPv6 environment, you cannot setup this machine using the installer.
- The Internet Print (IPP) is not supported in the IPv6 environment.

Allowing device information to be acquired from the printer driver

Disable the OpenAPI authentication function. (In normal circumstances, you can use the default settings.)

When you allow acquisition of device information from the printer driver, the printer driver automatically obtains information such as what options are installed in this machine and whether authentication settings have been configured.

For details on how to configure the settings, refer to page 7-12.

Related setting (for the administrator)

 The device information collection from printer driver can be restricted by password (default: [No]). For details, refer to page 7-11 ([Assign Account to Acquire Device Info]).

2.1.3 Easy installation process of the printer driver

Installation flow

This section describes the setup flow for printing from your computer.

- 1 Preparing the printer driver
 - → Preparing the DVD-ROM
 - → Checking the printer driver type

Three printer drivers for different purposes are available. Select the printer driver that meets your printing aims.

→ Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver

Check that your computer meets the operating environment requirements of the printer driver.

- 2 Installing the printer driver to the computer
 - → Installing the printer driver using the installer

Insert the DVD-ROM into the drive, and install the software by following the on-screen instructions. → Performing a test print

If necessary, perform a test print to check that printing process works correctly.

3 Preparation finished.

Checking the printer driver type

The following types of printer drivers are available. Select the printer driver that meets your printing aims.

Printer driver	Page descrip- tion language	Description
PCL driver	PCL6	This is a standard driver for printing general office docu- ments. Among the three drivers, this driver provides the fastest printing speed.
PS driver	PostScript 3 Em- ulation	This driver is effective for high-definition printing of data created in PostScript-supporting application software from Adobe or other vendors. This driver is often used in graphics and light printing ap- plications where good color reproducibility is important.
XPS driver	XPS	Developed after Windows Vista, this driver supports XML Paper Specification (XPS). This driver has several advantages, including high-quali- ty reproduction of translucence.

Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver

The following lists the printer drivers included on the DVD-ROM supplied with this machine and the supported operating systems.

Printer driver	Supported Operating Systems		
PCL driver PS driver	Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) *1 Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1 or later) *1 Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Vista Business *2 Windows Vista Business *2 Windows Vista Enterprise *2 Windows Vista Home Basic *2 Windows Vista Home Premium *2 Windows Vista Ultimate *2 Windows Server 2008 Standard *2 Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic Windows 7 Home Premium *2 Windows 7 Professional *2 Windows 7 Enterprise *2 Windows 7 Enterprise *2 Windows 7 Enterprise *2 Windows 7 Ultimate *2		
XPS driver	Windows Vista Business *2 Windows Vista Enterprise *2 Windows Vista Home Basic *2 Windows Vista Home Premium *2 Windows Vista Ultimate *2 Windows Server 2008 Standard *2 Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic Windows 7 Home Premium *2 Windows 7 Professional *2 Windows 7 Enterprise *2 Windows 7 Ultimate *2		

*1 The operating environment required for the installer is SP2 or later.

*2 Supports 32-bit (×86)/64-bit (×64) environment.

Installation procedure

Install the printer driver using the installer.

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- ✓ Use DVD-ROM to install the PCL/PS and the XPS driver on the PC.
- The following explains the PCL/PS driver installation procedure. You can also install the XPS driver in a similar way.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
 - → Make sure that the installer starts, and then go to Step 2.
 - → If the installer does not start, open the printer driver folder on the DVD-ROM, double-click [Setup.exe], and then go to Step 3.
 - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- 2 Click [Printer Install].
- 3 Read the license agreement and click [AGREE].
- 4 Select [Install printers/MFPs] and click [Next].

Connected printers are detected.

- → For Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, you can select [Preference for IPv4] or [Preference for IPv6]. The address has the preference when detected in both IPv4 and IPv6.
- 5 Select this machine, then click [Next].
 - → If this machine is not detected, restart this machine.
 - → You do not need to change the printing method from [Normal Printing] (Port 9100) unless otherwise specified by the administrator.
 - → As a printing method, you can select [Normal Printing], [Internet Printing] (IPP), or [Secure Printing] (IPPS).
 - → Among the connected printers, only the target model is automatically detected and displayed. If multiple target models are displayed, check the IP addresses. You can check the IP address of this machine in the screen that is displayed by tapping [Utility] - [Device Information].
 - → If the connection to this machine cannot be recognized, it is not displayed in the list. If this is the case, select [Specify the Printer/MFP Except for the Above. (IP Address, Host Name...)], and manually specify the IP address and host name of this machine.
- 6 Select the check box of the printer driver you want to install, then click [Next].
 - → For features of each printer driver, refer to page 2-5.
- 7 Check the items to be installed, and click [Install].
- 8 If necessary, change the printer name or print a test page, and click [Finish].

This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

Settings	Description
[Review]	You can check the items that are installed.
[Rename Printer]	If necessary, change the name of this machine.
[Property]	You can configure the optional environment of this machine. For details, refer to page 2-8.
[Print Setting]	If necessary, change the default print settings for this machine. For details, refer to page 2-9.
[Print Test page]	If necessary, print a test page to check that printing process works correct- ly.

Reference

When you finish installing the printer driver, configure the default settings of the printer driver. For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.1.4 Configuring the default settings of the printer driver

Configuring the optional environment of this machine

When you use this machine for the first time, check that information such as what options are installed in this machine and whether authentication settings have been configured is correctly reflected to the printer driver.

- 1 Display the [Properties] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Properties] window, refer to page 2-94.
- 2 In the [Configure] tab, check the information such as what options are installed in this machine and whether authentication settings have been configured.
 - → By default, [Auto] in [Obtain Settings...] is enabled. The information on this machine is automatically obtained and reflected to [Device Option].
 - → When [Auto] in [Obtain Settings...] is disabled, clicking [Obtain Device Information] obtains and reflects the information on this machine to [Device Option].
 - → If you cannot establish communication with this machine, manually set this information in [Device Option]. Select the item from the list, and select the setting from [Setting].

neral Sharing	Ports Ad	vanced Color N	anagement Se		Settings		
C754	2		BHDD	Device Option Model Paper Source Ur Finisher Punch Unit	nit(LCT) L F	754 U-204 S-535 K-521 (2/3-Hole)	* E
			-1	Punch Z-Fold Un Post Inserter Saddle Kt Hard Disk	nt 2 F	2U-606 (2/3-Hole) 9-505 1D-512 hstalled	-
Paper Tray			·	C754			•
Tray	Size	Direction	Paper Typ	B			
Tray1	A4	LEF	Plain Paper				=
Tray2	A4	🖵 LEF	Plain Paper				
Tray3	A4	🕞 LEF	Plain Paper				
Tray4	A4	D LEF	Plain Paper				*
Paper 1	Fray Settings	Set Pape	r Name by User				
		Encrypt	on Passphrase	Sol	ftware Tools		
Ubtain De	vice Informatio	n		۷	Veb Connection		•
Obtai	n Settings						Start

3 Click [OK].

Changing the default print settings

If necessary, you can change the default print settings of the printer driver.

For example, if you set black-and-white printing as a default setting, users need to change the setting when they want to use color printing. As a result, unnecessary color printing can be prevented. We recommend that you change the default settings to suit your environment.

- 1 Display the [Printing Preferences] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Printing Preferences] window, refer to page 2-98.
- 2 Change the print settings, and click [OK].

The changed settings are applied when printing is performed from any application software.

KONICA MINOLTA C754SeriesPCL Printing Pro My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod		
8 1/2x11 (215 9x279 4 mm) 8 1/2x11 (215 9x279 4 mm) 1 /2x11 (215 9x179	Favorite Setting	Output Method Image: Print User Settings Authentication/Account Track Copies Image: Print Image: Print Copies Image: Print Image: Print

Reference

The printer driver has the function to save favorite settings. It is useful to register frequently used print settings as favorite settings. For details, refer to page 2-17.

2.2 Preparation for Printing (USB Connection)

2.2.1 Overview

Before using this machine as a printer, you need to install the printer driver on your computer.

This section describes preparatory steps for printing from this machine using the installer that comes with this machine.



2.2.2 Easy installation process of the printer driver

Installation flow

This section describes the setup flow for printing from your computer.

- 1 Preparing the printer driver
 - → Preparing the DVD-ROM
 - → Checking the printer driver type

Three printer drivers for different purposes are available. Select the printer driver that meets your printing aims.

→ Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver

Check that your computer meets the operating environment requirements of the printer driver.

- 2 Installing the printer driver to the computer
 - → Configuring the installation settings on the computer

When you are using Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, you need to change the settings on the computer in advance.

→ Installing the printer driver using the installer

Connect the USB printer cable, insert the DVD-ROM into the drive, and install the software by following the on-screen instructions.

→ Performing a test print

If necessary, perform a test print to check that printing process works correctly.

3 Preparation finished.

Checking the printer driver type

The following types of printer drivers are available. Select the printer driver that meets your printing aims.

Printer driver	Page descrip- tion language	Description
PCL driver	PCL6	This is a standard driver for printing general office docu- ments. Among the three drivers, this driver provides the fastest printing speed.
PS driver	PostScript 3 Em- ulation	This driver is effective for high-definition printing of data created in PostScript-supporting application software from Adobe or other vendors. This driver is often used in graphics and light printing ap- plications where good color reproducibility is important.
XPS driver	XPS	Developed after Windows Vista, this driver supports XML Paper Specification (XPS). This driver has several advantages, including high-quali- ty reproduction of translucence.

Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver

The following lists the printer drivers included on the DVD-ROM supplied with this machine and the supported operating systems.

Printer driver	Supported Operating Systems		
PCL driver PS driver	 Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) *1 Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1 or later) *1 Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 1 or later) Windows Server 2003 R2, Standard Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Windows Server 2003, Standard ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Server 2003 R2, Enterprise ×64 Edition Windows Vista Business ² Windows Vista Enterprise *2 Windows Vista Home Basic *2 Windows Vista Home Premium *2 Windows Server 2008 Standard *2 Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise *2 Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic Windows 7 Home Premium *2 Windows 7 Professional *2 Windows 7 Home Premium *2 		
XPS driver	Windows Vista Business *2 Windows Vista Enterprise *2 Windows Vista Home Basic *2 Windows Vista Home Premium *2 Windows Vista Ultimate *2 Windows Server 2008 Standard *2 Windows Server 2008 Enterprise *2 Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise Windows 7 Home Basic Windows 7 Home Premium *2 Windows 7 Professional *2 Windows 7 Enterprise *2 Windows 7 Ultimate *2		

*1 The operating environment required for the installer is SP2 or later.

*2 Supports 32-bit (×86)/64-bit (×64) environment.

Changing the installation settings (Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 R2)

When you are using Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, change the PC settings before installing the printer driver.

- 1 From the Start menu, click [Control Panel] [System and Security] [System].
- Click [Advanced system settings] on the menu to the left.
 The [System Properties] window appears.
- 3 In the [Hardware] tab, click [Device Installation Settings].
- 4 Select [No, let me choose what to do], select [Never install driver software from Windows Update.], then click [Save Changes].
 - → After you have installed the printer driver, change the setting back to [Yes, do this automatically (recommended)].
- 5 Click [OK] to close the [System Properties] window.

Install the printer driver using the installer.

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- ✓ Use DVD-ROM to install the PCL/PS and the XPS driver on the PC.
- ✓ The following explains the PCL/PS driver installation procedure. You can also install the XPS driver in a similar way.
- 1 Connect a USB cable to the USB port of this machine.
 - → If a wizard window for adding new hardware opens, click [Cancel].



- 2 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
 - → Make sure that the installer starts, then go to Step 3.
 - → If the installer does not start, open the printer driver folder on the DVD-ROM, double-click [Setup.exe], then go to Step 4.
 - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- 3 Click [Printer Install].
- 4 Read the license agreement and click [AGREE].
- 5 Select [Install printers/MFPs] and click [Next]. USB-connected printers are detected.
- 6 Select this machine, then click [Next].
- 7 Select the check box of the printer driver you want to install, then click [Next].
 - → For features of each printer driver, refer to page 2-5.
- 8 Check the items to be installed, and click [Install].
- 9 If necessary, change the printer name or print a test page, and click [Finish].

This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

Settings	Description
[Review]	You can check the items that are installed.
[Rename Printer]	If necessary, change the name of this machine.
[Property]	You can configure the optional environment of this machine. For details, refer to page 2-8.
[Print Setting]	If necessary, change the default print settings for this machine. For details, refer to page 2-9.
[Print Test page]	If necessary, print a test page to check that printing process works correctly.

Reference

When you finish installing the printer driver, configure the default settings of the printer driver. For details, refer to page 2-14.

2.2.3 Configuring the default settings of the printer driver

Configuring the optional environment of this machine

When you use this machine for the first time, configure the printer driver so that it contains information such as what options are installed in this machine and whether authentication settings have been configured.

- 1 Display the [Properties] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Properties] window, refer to page 2-94.
- 2 In the [Configure] tab, configure the information such as what options are installed in this machine and whether authentication settings have been configured.
 - → If you are using Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, [Auto] under [Obtain Settings...] is enabled by default. Thus, the information on this machine is automatically obtained and applied for [Device Option].

When [Auto] in [Obtain Settings...] is disabled, clicking [Obtain Device Information] obtains and reflects the information on this machine to [Device Option].

→ If you are using Windows XP/Server 2003, set the option manually using [Device Option]. Select the item from the list, and select the setting from [Setting].

neral Shari	ing Ports Ad	Ivanced Color N	lanagement Se	county Configure Settings
C754			BHDD	Device Option
				Mode CF34 Paper Source Unit(LCT) LU/204 Pranter F5:335 Parch Unit P5:332 (D/3-Hole) Parch Unit 2:1655 Parch Unit 2:1655 Sodia fit S:0510 Hard Duk Initialed C754
Tray	y Information Size	Direction	Paper Typ	
Tray1	A4	LEF	Plain Paper	E
Tray2	A4	LEF	Plain Paper	
Tray3	A4	🕞 LEF	Plain Paper	
Tray4	A4	🖵 LEF	Plain Paper	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Pape	r Tray Settings	Set Pape	ar Name by User	
		Encrypt	on Passphrase	Software Tools
Ubtain	Device Informatio	n		Web Connection 👻
Ob	tain Settings			Start

3 Click [OK].

Changing the default print settings

If necessary, you can change the default print settings of the printer driver.

For example, if you set black-and-white printing as a default setting, users need to change the setting when they want to use color printing. As a result, unnecessary color printing can be prevented. We recommend that you change the default settings to suit your environment.

- 1 Display the [Printing Preferences] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Printing Preferences] window, refer to page 2-98.
- 2 Change the print settings, and click [OK].

The changed settings are applied when printing is performed from any application software.

KONICA MINOLTA C754SeriesPCL Printing Pre	ferences
🤵 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting V Add Edit
8 [°] 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Orientation Output Method Output Method Output Method Dandscape
	Original Size User Settings 8 1/2x11 ✓ ▲ Paper Size ✓ Same as Original Size ✓ Zoom [25400%] ✓ ● Auto 100 ● Marval 100
	Paper Tray Auto Paper Type
	Plain Paper Plain Pla
Printer View Printer Information	Default
	OK Cancel Apply Help

Reference

The printer driver has the function to save favorite settings. For details, refer to page 2-17.

2.3 Printing procedure

2.3.1 Printing operation flow

- 1 Open document data using the application software. From the [File] menu, select [Print].
- 2 Check the [Printer Name] (or [Select Printer]) and make sure that the desired printer has been selected.
 - → The [Print] dialog box varies depending on the application software.

🖶 Print	×			
General				
Select Printer				
HINOLTA C754SeriesFAX	🖶 KONICA MINOLTA C754			
KONICA MINOLTA C754SeriesPCL	Hicrosoft XPS Documen			
HINOLTA C754SeriesPS				
٩	4			
Status: Ready	Print to file Preferences			
Location:				
Comment:	Find Printer			
Page Range				
 All 	Number of copies: 1			
Selection Current Page				
Pages:	Collate 11 22 33			
F	Print Cancel Apply			

- 3 Specify the print range and the number of copies to print.
- 4 Click [Properties] (or [Preferences]) to change the print settings of the printer driver as necessary.
 - → The print settings you have changed here are reset to the defaults when you exit the application software. For information on how to change the default values of print settings, refer to page 2-9.
 - → The printer driver has the function to easily recall frequently used print settings. For details, refer to page 2-17.
- 5 Click [Print].

Printing is executed.

Reference

When [Secure Print Only] is set to [On] in [Device Option] in the [Configure] tab, the [Secure Print] window appears. In the [Secure Print] window, enter the ID and password to start printing.

For details on Secure Print, refer to page 2-75.

The XPS driver has the function that enables you to preview and check the print image before starting printing. For details, refer to page 2-72.

2.3.2 Easily recalling frequently used print settings

Registering frequently used print settings

You can register the current print settings as a favorite and recall it when executing printing.

When you register a frequently used combination of print settings as a favorite, you can easily apply all of those settings just by selecting the combination from the Favorite Setting list, even if the combination is complicated as it contains settings on multiple tabs.

This section describes how to register favorites.

- 1 In the [Printing Preferences] window, set the print conditions you want to register as a favorite.
- 2 Click [Add...].
 - → To edit a registered favorite, select from [Favorite Setting] the name of the favorite you want to edit, and click [Edit].

Rinting Preferences			
🙍 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other		
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Orientation Orientation Orientation Orientation Orientation	Output Method	
	Original Size 8 1/2x11	User Settings Authentication/Account Track	
x1	Same as Original Size Zoom [25400%] Auto X	Copies 1 [19999] 1 [9999]	
	Manual Paper Tray Auto	A Offset	
	Paper Type Plain Paper 👻	Paper Settings for Each Tray	
Printer View Printer Information		Default	
		OK Cancel Help	

- 3 Enter the name of the favorite to be registered.
 - → As necessary, specify the icon, comment, and items to be recalled for the favorite.



Settings	Description
[Name]	Enter the name of the favorite to be registered. Use a name that helps you easily identify the favorite.
[lcon]	If necessary, assign an icon to the favorite.
[Sharing]	Select this check box when you want to share the favorite with other users.
[Comment]	If necessary, enter a comment on the favorite. The comment is displayed when you place the mouse cursor over the fa- vorite on the Favorite Setting list.

Settings	Description
[Restore Items]	Items that are determined when you start printing, such as the original size and the number of copies, are registered in the favorite. By default, these items are not recalled with the favorite. As necessary, you can specify them as items to be recalled. Select the check box of items to be retrieved.

4 Click [OK].

2

The print settings are registered as a favorite. When starting printing, you can select the registered setting from [Favorite Setting].

Customizing the setting window

You can gather setting items from difference tabs and place them in [My Tab].

Registering frequently used setting items in [My Tab] allows you to change settings in one tab, without switching among multiple tabs.

This section describes how to edit [My Tab].

- 1 Click [My Tab] [Edit My Tab...].
 - → You can also register a function in [My Tab] by selecting [to the LEFT] or [to the RIGHT] from the [My Tab] menu that is displayed by right-clicking the function.



- → Clicking [to the LEFT] places the selected function in the area to the left of [My Tab] and clicking [to the RIGHT] places it in the area to the right of [My Tab].
- → An icon appears to the left of each function that is registered in [My Tab].

asic Layout Finish	Cover Mode Stamp/Composition	Quality Other
Staple Center Staple and Fo Punch Fold Page Fold Setting Output Tray Paper Arrangement	let in the second se	
to the LEFT My Tab LEFT side Original Orientation	▼ to the RIGHT	
Original Size Paper Size Output Method	Offset Print Type Staple Select Color	Down

- 3 As necessary, move or delete the registered functions.
 - → To move a function, select the function and click [Up], [Down], or [Left/Right].
 - → To delete a function from [My Tab], select the function and click [Remove].

Edit My Tab	X
Setting Item List Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode Stamp/Composition Quality Context Staple and Fold Center Staple and Fold Page Fold Setting Output Tray Paper Arrangement	Other
▼ to the LEFT ▼ to the RIGHT M Y Tob © ClipIt State Object State Control Object State Control Output Method Staple State Staple Output Method Staple	▲ Up ▼ Down ● Left/Right Remove
OK Cancel De	fault Help

4 Click [OK].

This completes editing [My Tab].

Reference

From [My Tab Settings] in the [Settings] tab, you can configure display settings for My Tab. For details, refer to page 2-96.

2.4 Useful printing functions

2

2.4.1 Changing the paper size or type

Enlarging or reducing to the paper size ([Paper Size])

The original is printed after it is enlarged or reduced by a ratio that is automatically determined by the original size and paper size.

If you select a paper size larger than the original size, the original is enlarged to the paper size. If you select a paper size smaller than the original size, the original is reduced to the paper size.



In [Paper Size] in the [Basic] tab, select the size of paper for printing. The zoom ratio is automatically determined by the paper sizes selected in [Original Size] and [Paper Size].



Tips

• This function is enabled when [Zoom] is set to [Auto].
Enlarging or reducing by the desired zoom ratio ([Zoom])

You can print the original image after it has been enlarged or reduced by the desired zoom ratio. The zoom ratio can be specified to be between 25% and 400% (in increments of 1%).



In [Zoom] in the [Basic] tab, specify the zoom ratio.

Printing Preferences		×
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled - Add	Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Oteritation Output Method Image: Set in the set of the	ount Track) 19] ate et
Printer View Printer Information		Default
	OK Cancel	Help

Printing on custom size paper ([Original Size])

A special sized original is printed on custom sized paper loaded in the Bypass Tray.

- 1 In [Original Size] in the [Basic] tab, select [Custom Size].
 - → In [Paper Size], select [Same as Original Size].

Rrinting Preferences		×
My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Ot	her
Custom Size (8.5x11")	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
Custom Size (8.5x117)	Orginal Orientation ● Potrat ● Landscape Original Size ■ Paper Size Same as Original Size Zoom (25, 400%) ● Adro ■ Adro Paper Tray Auto Paper Tray Auto Paper Tray Auto Paper Tray Paper Tray Auto Paper Tray Auto Paper Tray Auto Paper Tray Auto Paper Tray Paper Tray	Output Method User Settings Authentication/Account Track Copies 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
	Plain Paper	▼ Paper Settings for Each Tray
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

The [Custom Size] setting window appears.

2 Specify the width and length as desired, and click [OK].

Custom Size Settings	×
Width	Unit Omm @ inch
11.000 inch [5.50047.244]	
OK Cancel Defa	ult Help

Reference

Load the custom sized paper in the **Bypass Tray**. For details on how to add paper to the **Bypass Tray**, refer to [User's Guide: Introduction (Trademark Licenses)].

When you are using the PCL driver, you can register a custom size in the [Settings] tab. For details in the [Settings] tab, refer to page 2-96.



In [Paper Type] in the [Basic] tab, select the type of paper for printing. This function is enabled when [Paper Tray] is set to [Auto].

Printing Preferences	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other	×
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
x1	Original Orientation Original Size 8 1/2x11 Conginal Size 8 1/2x11 Conginal Size Same as Original Size Cong (25.400%) Auto Narual Paper Tray Auto Paper Type Track 1=	Output Method User Settings. Authentication/Account Track. Copies 1 (1
Printer View Printer Information	HUCK 1*	Default
		OK Cancel Help

In [Paper Settings for Each Tray...] on the [Basic] tab, you can set a paper type for each tray. When you specify anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray], the paper type information specified here is applied.

evice Statu:	3			
Tray	Size	Direction	Paper Type	
Tray1	A4	LEF	Plain Paper	5
Tray2	A4	🕞 LEF	Plain Paper	_
Tray3	A4	🕞 LEF	Plain Paper	
Tray4	A4	🕞 LEF	Plain Paper	
Tray	2 Thi	ck 1+		
Tray Tray		per Type in Paper		·
		ck 1+		
Tray	3 Pla	in Paper		
Tray	4 Pla	in Paper		
aper Type				
Thick 1+		-		
			Reflect Devic	e Status

Specifying the paper tray ([Paper Tray])

In [Paper Tray] in the [Basic] tab, select the paper tray for printing.

Rinting Preferences					
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other		
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting	Untitle	d	▼ Add Edit	
x1 x1 x1 x1 x1 x1 x1 x1 x1 x1	Original Orientatic Original Orientatic Original Size 8 1/2x11 4 Raper Size Same as Original Zoom [25.400% @ Auto Manual Paper Tray Fray Paper Type Plain Paper	iit scape Size	• • • •	Output Method User Settings Authentication/Account Track Copies 1 1 1.9999 U Collate 2 Offset Paper Settings for Each Tray Default	
				OK Cancel Help	

Tips

2

• If you select [Auto], the paper tray for the paper you have selected in [Paper Size] is automatically selected.

Printing on postcards

You can print the original on a postcard loaded in the Bypass Tray.

- 1 Set as follows on the [Basic] tab.
 - → [Original Size]: Select [Postcard].
 - → [Paper Size]: Select [Same as Original Size].
 - → [Paper Tray]: Select [Bypass Tray].

Printing Preferences		
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
Postcard (100x148 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
Postcard (100x148 mm) Image: State St	Original Orientation	Output Method User Settings Authentication/Account Track Copies 1 (1.999) U Colate
	Plain Paper 👻	Paper Settings for Each Tray
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

- 2 Click [Paper Settings for Each Tray...]
- **3** From [Paper Type], select [Thick 3] and click [OK].

Tray	Size	Direction	Paper Type	
Tray1	A4	🖵 LEF	Plain Paper	
Tray2	A4	🕞 LEF	Plain Paper	
Tray3	A4	🕞 LEF	Plain Paper	
Tray4	A4	🕞 LEF	Plain Paper	
per Type				
Thick 3		-		

4 Execute printing.

A message appears on the **Touch Panel** to prompt you to load postcards.

- 5 Load postcards into the **Bypass Tray**.
 - → For details on how to load postcards, refer to the [User's Guide: Introduction (Trademark Licenses)].
- 6 Tap [Complete] on the **Touch Panel**. Printing starts.

Printing on paper in multiple trays ([Carbon Copy])

You can print the original on different sheets of paper loaded in multiple trays. Because you can obtain printing results that look like carbon-copied slips using the print command once, this function is called Carbon Copy.

For example, by using the print command once, you can print a submission document on high-quality color paper loaded in **Tray1** and print your copy on recycled paper loaded in **Tray2**.

This function is useful when you want to create a submission document and its copy at one time.



- 1 In [Paper Tray] in the [Basic] tab, select the paper tray for printing the original.
 - Printing Preferences 2 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode Stamp/Composition Quality Other Favorite Setting Untitled ▼ Add... Edit... x11 (215.9x279.4 m Original Orientation Portrait C Landscape Output Met Print Original Size 8 1/2x11 User Settings. Authentication/Account Track... 🐥 Paper Size Same as Original Size [1...9999] Zoom [25...400%] Auto
 Manual 민민 Collate 100 🚔 A C Offset Paper Tray Ef A. W. C. aper Type 3) 7 Ł 28 B Paper Settings for Each Tray... Default
- OK Cancel Help

→ You cannot select [Auto].

2 In the [Cover Mode] tab, select the [Carbon Copy] check box.

👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Front Cover	Per Page Setting
	🔁 Blank 👻	
	Front Cover Tray	Edit List
	Tray1 -	
	Blank	Transparency Interleave
	Back Cover Tray	Interleave Tray
		Carbon Copy
		Carbon Copy Settings
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

The [Carbon Copy Settings] window appears.

3 Specify the paper tray for carbon copies and output order, and click [OK].

Carbon Copy Settings	×
Original Copy Tray1 Output Order	Carbon Copy Tray
ОК Са	Bypass Tray ancel Default Help

Settings	Description	
[Original Copy]	The paper tray for printing the original is displayed.	
[Carbon Copy Tray]	Select the paper tray for carbon copies. Select the check boxes for all paper trays to be used.	
[Output Order]	 Select the order of outputting carbon copies. [Tray]: Carbon copies are printed in order of selected trays. When an original of multiple pages is printed, all pages are printed on paper from one tray, then the next tray is used. [Page]: Carbon copies are printed page by page. When an original of multiple pages is printed, each page is printed on paper from all the selected trays. 	

2.4.2 Printing multiple sets of copies

Specifying the number of copies ([Copies])

In [Copies] in the [Basic] tab, specify the number of copies you want to print.



Reference

When you print a large number of copies, use of the Proof Print function will prevent a large number of misprints being created, thereby reducing the amount of waste paper generated. For details, refer to page 2-73.

Printing by sets ([Collate]/[Offset])

2

When multiple sets of copies are printed, the paper output position of each set is staggered to help you locate the first page of each set.



When the [Collate] check box on the [Basic] tab is selected, copies are output separately in a set-by-set manner, for example, "Pages 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5", "Pages 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5", and then "Pages 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5". When the [Offset] check box is selected, the sets are output in staggered layers.

When you select both [Collate] and [Offset] check boxes, the output position is staggered for each set, allowing you to easily prepare handouts.

Printing Preferences		×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
x6	Original Orientation Original Size B 1/2x11 Paper Size Same as Original Size Auto Paper Tray Auto Paper Type Plan Paper V	Output Method User Settings Authentication/Account Track Copies 6 (19999) U (Collate (19999) Collate (19999) Co
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		Cancel Help

2.4.3 Saving the number of printed sheets

Printing multiple pages on the same side of a single sheet ([Combination])

You can print multiple reduced size pages on the same side of a single sheet to reduce the number of pages to be printed.



In [Combination] in the [Layout] tab, select N in 1. For example, when you select [9 in 1], every set of nine pages is reduced and printed on the same side of one sheet.

Printing Preferences		×
🙍 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Combination	Print Type
	4 in 1 -	2-Sided 🗸
1_2	Combination Details	
		Binding Position
3 4		Auto 🗸
x1	Rotate 180	Binding Margin
	Skip Blank Pages	Binding Margin Settings
	Chapters	Image Shift
	Entry Example 2,4,6-10	Image Shift Settings
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

If necessary, click [Combination Details...] to set the page layout order and whether to input border lines between pages.



Settings	Description				
[Layout Order]	Select the page layout order.				
[Border]	Select this check box when you want to draw border lines between pages. In addition, select the type of border lines from [Frame] and [Line].				

Tips

• By using this function in combination with the 2-Sided Print function ([Print Type]: [2-Sided]), you can save more amount of paper.

Printing on both sides of paper ([2-Sided])

By using both sides of paper for printing, you can halve paper consumption.



In [Print Type] in the [Layout] tab, select [2-Sided].

Printing P			1					-
👷 My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other	
8 1/2x11	(215.9)	c279.4 m	ım)		Favorite Setting	🕵 D	efault Se	etting Add Edit
8 [°] 1/2x11	(215.9)	с279.4 п	im)		Combination			Print Type
					2 in 1		Ŧ	2-Sided 🗸
			1		Combination	Details		
			[]					Binding Position
			2					Ly van v
				x1	Rotate 180			Binding Margin
	[22]	12a		RF 1	📃 Skip Blank Page	s		Binding Margin Settings
		크		92	Chapters			Image Shift
	i,c	A	W.		Entry Example 2	,4,6-10		Image Shift Settings
	Ł	2			L			
Printe	r View	P	rinter Info	omation				Default
								OK Cancel Help

Tips

2

• By using this function in combination with the Combine function ([Combination]: "N in 1"), you can save more amount of paper.

Blank pages contained in the original are skipped when the original is printed. You can reduce the number of printed sheets.



In the [Layout] tab, select the [Skip Blank Pages] check box.

Printing Preferences		X
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mo	de Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	► Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Combination	Print Type
	2 in 1 -	2-Sided -
	Combination Details	
		Binding Position
		🖵 Auto 👻
x1	Rotate 180	Binding Margin
	Skip Blank Pages	Binding Margin Settings
	Chapters	Image Shift
	Entry Example 2,4,6-10	Image Shift Settings
🖬 🗗 🞜 🖪 🔲		
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

Tips

• For some originals, blank pages are also printed.

2.4.4 Binding printed sheets

Adding margin on pages ([Binding Margin])

A margin for binding is added on pages.



1 In the [Layout] tab, select the [Binding Margin] check box.

→ In [Binding Position] in the [Layout] tab, specify the margin position.

Printing Preferences			
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	de Stamp/Composition Q	uality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting	Untitled	Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Combination		Print Type
	2 in 1	-	2-Sided -
	Combination D	etails	
			Binding Position
			Auto -
x1	Rotate 180		Binding Margin
	Skip Blank Pages		Binding Margin Settings
	Chapters		Image Shift
	Entry Example 2,4,	.6-10	Image Shift Settings
Printer View Printer Information			Default
			OK Cancel Help

- 2 Click [Binding Margin Settings...].
- 3 Adjust the size of margin and click [OK].

Binding Margin	Settings	X						
Shift Mod	e							
	 ● Paral ○ Auto 	lel Shift Reduction						
Front Side		Unit						
	inch [0.001.96]	() mm						
Back Side	inch (0.001.96)	inch						
☑ Same value for front and back sides								
ОК	Cancel	Default Help						

Settings	Description
[Shift Mode]	Select how the images are shifted for creating the margin.
[Front Side]/[Back Side]	Specify the size of the margin on the front side. When you print on both sides, specify the size of the margin on the back side. When the [Same value for front and back sides] check box is select- ed, a margin of the same size is created on both front and back sides.

Each set of papers can be stapled (at a corner or at two positions) and output automatically. This function is useful for preparing a project proposal or other booklet materials.



In the [Finish] tab, select the [Staple] check box. In addition, specify the number and positions of staples.

Printing Preferences					×
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish (Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	F	avorite Setting	Untitle	d	▼ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)		V Staple			Output Tray
		Left Comer		•	Default 👻
		Center Staple ar	nd Fold		
		Punch			
		2-Hole (Left)		Ŧ	Paper Arrangement Prioritize Arranging Papers
		Fold			Filolitize Alfaliging Papers +
	x 1	Half-Fold(B	ly Copy J	ob) 👻	
	21.1				
	Ca	Page Fold Setting			
		1 [1	10]		
Printer View Printer Infom	nation				Default
				_	
					OK Cancel Help

Tips

- To use [Staple], the optional **Finisher** is required.
- In [Binding Position] in the [Layout] tab, specify the staple position.

Binding in the center of the paper ([Center Staple and Fold])

The printed sheets are bound in the center and folded before they are output.



In the [Finish] tab, select the [Center Staple and Fold] check box.

As the sheets are bound in the center, use the combined document data or set the [Print Type] to [Booklet] on the [Layout] tab.

Printing Preferences		×
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Staple	Dutput Tray
	Left Comer 👻	Default
	Center Staple and Fold	
	Punch 2-Hole (Top)	Darry American
	Fold	Paper Arrangement Prioritize Arranging Papers -
	Half-Fold(By Copy Job) -	
x1	4	
	Page Fold Setting	
	1 📮 [110]	
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help
		UK Cancel Help

Tips

2

• To use [Center Staple and Fold], the optional **Finisher** and **Saddle Kit** are required.

Punching the printed sheets ([Punch])

Printed sheets are punched for filing before they are output. This function is useful when you want to bind printed materials in files.



In the [Finish] tab, select the [Punch] check box. In addition, specify the number and positions of punch holes.

Printing Preferences					×
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish C	over Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)		Favorite Setting	Untitle	d	✓ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)		Staple			Output Tray
		Left Comer		Ŧ	Default -
•		Center Staple ar	nd Fold		
•		2-Hole (Left)		-	Paper Arrangement
		Fold			Prioritize Arranging Papers
	x 1	Half-Fold(F	y Copy J	ob) 👻	
	<u>2</u>				
	Ča	Page Fold Setting			
		1 (1	10]		
Printer View Printer Inform	ation				Default
-					OK Cancel Help

Tips

- To use [Punch], the optional **Finisher** and **Punch Kit** are required.
- In [Binding Position] in the [Layout] tab, specify the punch position.
- The number of punched holes varies depending on the country you are in.

Folding papers ([Fold])

The printed sheets are creased before they are output.

Half-Fold

2



Tri-Fold



Z-Fold

|--|

In the [Finish] tab, select the [Fold] check box, and select the folding mode.

When you want to fold page by page, specify the number of pages to be folded at one time in [Page Fold Setting].

Printing Pr	eference	es						×
🧟 My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other	
8_1/2x11	(215.9	c279.4 n	ım)		Favorite Setting	Untitled		✓ Add Edit
8 1/2x11	(215.9)	c279.4 n	ım)		Staple Left Comer Center Staple	and Fold	¥	Dutput Tray
		1			Punch 2-Hole (Top)	(By Copy Jo		Paper Arrangement Prioritize Arranging Papers 👻
		C) A);		x1	Page Fold Setting			
	r View	2 7	rinter Info	mation	1 💉 [110]		Default
								OK Cancel Help

Tips

- To use Half-Fold or Tri-Fold of [Fold], the optional Finisher and Saddle Kit are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold], the optional **Finisher** and **Z-Fold Unit** are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold], specify the paper size described in the setting you selected from the drop-down list ([Z-Fold (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8K)] or [Z-Fold (8 1/2 × 14)] as "Paper Size" of the application software or printer driver.
- This function cannot be used on originals that contain more pages than the number of pages that can be folded by this machine.

Printing in a booklet format ([Booklet])

The pages in the original data are arranged and spread out in booklet format and printed on both sides of sheets. When the printed sheets are stacked and folded in two, the pages are arranged in the correct order.



In [Print Type] in the [Layout] tab, select [Booklet].

Printing Preferences			×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting	Untitled	✓ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Combination		Print Type
	2 in 1	Ŧ	Booklet -
613	Combination	Details	
			Binding Position
			Auto 🗸
x1	Rotate 180		Binding Margin
	📃 Skip Blank Page		Binding Margin Settings
	Chapters Entry Example 2		Image Shift
	Entry Example 2	.,4,0-10	Image Shift Settings
Printer View Printer Information		e when folded into aper selected in th	
			OK Cancel Help

Tips

- By selecting [Fold] or [Center Staple and Fold] in the [Finish] tab in combination with this function, you can create booklet-form documents by folding the printed sheets in the center or by binding them using two staples in the center. To use [Center Staple and Fold] or [Fold], the optional **Finisher** and **Saddle Kit** are required.
- By selecting [Chapters] in the [Layout] tab in combination with this function, you can place the specified page on the front side.

Specifying the output tray ([Output Tray])

In [Output Tray] in the [Finish] tab, select the tray to which printed sheets are output.

Printing Preferences	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	► Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Staple	Output Tray
	Left Comer	Tray1
	Punch	
	2-Hole (Left)	Paper Arrangement
	Fold Half-Fold(By Copy Job)	Prioritize Arranging Papers -
	Page Fold Setting	
	1 (110)	
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

2.4.5 Adjusting the layout

Printing a poster-sized image ([Combination]) (PCL only)

The original image is enlarged, divided, and printed on multiple sheets. When you join the printed sheets together, a large poster is created.



In [Combination] in the [Layout] tab, select N \times N. For example, when you select [2 \times 2], one page of the original image is enlarged, divided, and printed on four sheets.

Printing Preferences		X
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	e Stamp/Composition Qua	ality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting	ntitled • Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Combination	Print Type
	2x 2	▼ 1-Sided ▼
	Combination Det	ails
		Binding Position
		Auto 🗸
x1	Rotate 180	Binding Margin
	Skip Blank Pages	Binding Margin Settings
	Chapters	Image Shift
	Entry Example 2,4,6	-10 Image Shift Settings
i 2 2 1 i 1		
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

As necessary, click [Combination Details...] to select whether to create overlap margins.



Rotating the image 180 degrees ([Rotate 180])

The image is printed upside down. Use this function when printing on envelopes whose loading direction cannot be changed.



In the [Layout] tab, select the [Rotate 180] check box.

🕵 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	✓ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Combination	Print Type
	2 in 1 👻	2-Sided -
	Combination Details	
		Binding Position
		🖵 Auto 👻
x1	V Rotate 180	Binding Margin
	Skip Blank Pages	Binding Margin Settings
	Chapters	Image Shift
	Entry Example 2,4,6-10	Image Shift Settings
Printer View Printer Information		Default

Fine-tuning the print position ([Image Shift])

You can fine tune the print position of the image upward, downward, rightward, and leftward with respect to the paper. When an image is printed on both side, you can also fine tune its position.

Use this function when you want to make a fine adjustment, such as changing the print position a little or printing images in different positions between the front and back sides.



1 In the [Layout] tab, select the [Image Shift] check box.

Rinting Preferences		×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
8 [°] 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Combination	Print Type
	Combination Details	Destre Destine
		Binding Position Auto
x1	Rotate 180	Binding Margin
	Skip Blank Pages	Binding Margin Settings
	Chapters	🔽 Image Shift
	Entry Example 2,4,6-10	Image Shift Settings
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

- 2 Click [Image Shift Settings...].
- 3 Adjust the upward/downward and rightward/leftward shift distances, and click [OK].
 - → When printing images on both sides, selecting the [Same value for Front and Back sides] check box applies the same settings to both sides.

Image Shift Settings	×
	Unit © mm @ inch
Front Side © Left	Back Side
Right	Right
0.000 📄 inch[0.0009.842]	0.000 inch[0.0009.842]
© Тор	© Тор
Bottom	Bottom
0.000 inch[0.0009.842]	0.000 inch[0.0009.842]
	Same value for Front and Back sides
ОК	Cancel Default Help

Adding a watermark ([Watermark])

Text such as "NO REPRODUCTION" and "INTERNAL USE" are printed on the center of all pages in a tint color.

By printing a watermark, you can specify the handling policy of copied documents.



In the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select the [Watermark] check box. In addition, select the watermark you want to print.

👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	•
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Watemark	Copy Security
	CIRCULAR	
	K NO REPRODUCTION K TOP SECRET	
	Edit	Date/Time Page Number
	Overlay	Edit
	None	•
		Header/Footer
		<machine setting1=""></machine>
6 2 2 6 1	Edit	Edit
Printer View Printer Information	For the functions that are set to the printer, settings of those func-	

Registering/editing a watermark

2

This machine has several factory-set watermarks. However, you can register new watermarks or edit existing watermarks as necessary.

1 In the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select the [Watermark] check box, and click [Edit].

Printing Preferences		×
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
▼ 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Watemark	Copy Security
	CIRCULAR	Copy Protect
	NO REPRODUCTION SECRET	Edit
	Edit	Date/Time
x1	Overlay	Edt
	None 👻	Header/Footer
		<machine setting1=""> -</machine>
5 2 5 6 1	Edit	Edit
Printer View Printer Information	For the functions that are set to be the printer, settings of those function	
		OK Cancel Help

- 2 Click [Add] and register the watermark data.
 - → To edit a registered watermark, select the watermark from the [Current Watermark] list, and edit the data.
 - → To delete a registered watermark, select the watermark from the [Current Watermark] list, and click [Delete].



Settings	Description
[Watermark Name]	Enter the name to be displayed in the watermark list (using up to 30 characters).
[Watermark Text]	Enter the text to be displayed as a watermark (using up to 30 characters).
[Up]/[Down]	Clicking these buttons changes the order of items in the list. You can move frequently used watermarks to upper positions.
[Position]	 Specify the print position for the watermark. [X]/[Y]: Adjust the horizontal and vertical positions of the watermark. The values change as you move the slide bar. [Center]: Click this button to reset the watermark position to the center. [Angle]: Adjust the angle of the watermark.
[Font Name]	Select the font for the watermark.
[Size]	Specify the font size for the watermark.
[Style]	Select the font style for the watermark.

Settings	Description
[Frame]	Select the frame for the watermark.
[Text Color]	Select the color of the watermark.
[Transparent]	Select this check box to print the watermark in a translucent tone. When this check box is cleared, the printed watermark obscures the back- ground.
[1st Page Only]	Select this check box to print the watermark only on the first page of the original.
[Repeat]	Select this check box to repeatedly print the watermark on each page.
[Sharing]	Select this check box to share the watermark with other users.

3 Click [OK].

Composing an overlay image ([Overlay])

An overlay image registered in the computer or this machine is recalled and printed on the original as a composite image.

- For details on how to register an overlay image on your computer, refer to page 2-45.
- For details on how to register an overlay image in a shared folder on the network, refer to page 2-46.
- For details on how to register an overlay image in this machine, refer to the [User's Guide: Copy Operations].



In [Overlay] in the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select [Print Host Image] or [Print Device Image] (PCL only), and then from the list, select the overlay image to be printed on the original as a composite image.



As necessary, click [Edit...] to add or delete overlay images. Alternatively, change the method of composing an overlay image.

When you have selected [Print Host Image]:

Print In Overlay	
Select Overlay File	
🧕 form1.KFO	Browse Files
	Delete
	Delete
Change 2nd Page an	d Later
🧟 form 1.KFO	
File Information	
	All Pages
Overlay Name:	
File Name:	form1.KFO ≣
Folder:	C:\Users\User01\Documents
Original Size:	8 1/2x11
Original Orientation:	Portrait
Color:	Color
•	4 III
Overlay Print Setting	
Pages	Overwrite
All Pages	
OK	Cancel Default Help

Settings Description		Description
[Selec	ct Overlay File]	Add or delete overlay images.
[[Browse Files]	Add an overlay image to the list.
[[Delete]	The selected overlay images are deleted from the list.
	[Change 2nd Page and Later]	Select this check box to change the overlay image to be printed on the sec- ond and subsequent pages of the original. In addition, from the list, select the overlay image you want to use.
[[File Information]	Information on the selected overlay image is displayed.
[Over	lay Print Setting]	If necessary, change the method of composing an overlay image.
[[Pages]	Select the range of pages on which an overlay image is composed.
[[Overwrite]	Select whether to compose the overlay image by overwriting the image on the front side of the original, or to composite it on the back side of the original.

When you have selected [Print Device Image]:

5			
Front Side	Back Side		
<machine setting001=""> (Unknown) (Unknown) (Unknown) (Unknown) (Unknown)</machine>	<machine setting001=""> (Unknown) (Unknown) (Unknown) (Unknown) (Unknown)</machine>		
 <ma< li=""> </ma<>	-	-	
	Browse		
Selec	t Color		
- Sam	Same as Stored 👻		
0] Dens	ity * [20100]		
- Ove	rlay Brightness	Ŧ	
🔽 Sa	ame as Front Side		
-			
	(Uhknown) (Uhknown) (Uhknown) (Uhknown) (Uhknown) (Uhknown) ↓ O Pr or cMa cMa cMa cMa cMa cMa cMa cMa cMa cMa	(Lhicnown) (Lhicnown)	

Settings	Description
[Obtain Device Information]	If your computer can communicate with this machine, your computer ob- tains and displays the latest information on the overlay images registered in this machine.
[Overlay Info]	Information on the overlay image selected from the list is displayed.
[Print on Front Side]/[Print on Back Side]	 Select this check box to compose an overlay image on the front and back sides. In addition, specify how to compose an overlay image. [Overlay Name]: Select the overlay image to be composed. [Select color]: Select the color of the overlay image to be composed. [Density]: Specify the density of the overlay image to be composed. [Overwrite]: Select whether to compose the overlay image by overwriting the image on the front side of the original, or to compose it on the back side of the original by watermarking the image. [Same as Front Side]: Select this check box to apply the settings for the front side to the back side.
[Pages]	Select the range of pages on which an overlay image is composed.

Creating an overlay image in the computer

In your computer, you can create an image that is composed on the original from [Overlay] in the [Stamp/Composition] tab. For example, you can register a corporate letterhead or other forms for use as a composite image on the original.

- 1 In application software, create an original to be registered in an overlay image.
- 2 In [Overlay] in the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select [Create Host Image].

8 1/2x11 (215 9x279.4 mm) 8 1/2x11 (215 9x279.4 mm) 8 1/2x11 (215 9x279.4 mm) Image: Strain S	Printing Preferences	Stamp/Composition	Quality Other	
Image: Security	8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting	Untitled	▼ Add Edit
Image: Second and the second and th	8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)			Copy Security
Edt Page Number Overlay Edt Overlay Edt Edt Header/Footer Image Edt Edt Edt Decide Most Manage Edt Edt Edt		CIRCULAR K WITHDRAW K NO REPROD		Edit
Image:		Edit		
	×1		je 🗸	Edit
Image: Section of the section of t				Header/Footer
Perter Merry Peter Information O For the functions that are set to be enabled in				<machine setting1=""> v</machine>
	E 2 2 E E	Ed	t	Edit
the printer, settings of those functions set in the vertice and the default	Printer View Printer Information			Default

3 In the application software, execute printing.

The [Create Overlay File] window appears.

4 Enter the file name and save the file.

The overlay image is saved on your computer. From then on, when you select [Print Host Image] in [Overlay] in the [Stamp/Composition] tab, the saved overlay image is displayed in the list and is also available.

Creating an overlay image in a shared folder

In a shared folder, you can create an image that is composed on the original from [Overlay] in the [Stamp/Composition] tab. The created overlay image can be shared by other users.

First, in the [Settings] tab, register a shared folder for storing the overlay image.

- **1** Display the [Properties] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Properties] window, refer to page 2-94.
- 2 In the [Settings] tab, select the [Share Overlay File(s)] check box.

😽 KONICA MINOLTA C754Seri	sPCL Properties
General Sharing Ports Adv	nced Color Management Security Configure Settings
C754	EMF Spool
0734	HDD Isplay Constraint Message
	Display paper set in Print Server Properties
	[Output Method] when printing is preserved
1	
	Share Overlay File(s)
	Shared Folder Settings
	Authentication Settings
	Secure Print Settings
	My Tab Settings
	Save Custom Size
	OK Cancel Apply Help

The [Shared Folder Settings] window appears.

3 Specify the shared folder for storing the overlay image, and click [OK].

Shared Folder Settings	×
Shared Folder	
\\WIN7-EN\Data_s	nare
	Change Folder
Shared Overlay f If you save the C	Overlay File (KFO) in a specified the file will automatically be
	-
ОК	Cancel Help

This completes the registration process of a shared folder. Then, create an overlay image.

4 In application software, create an original to be registered in an overlay image.

5 In [Overlay] in the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select [Create Shared Folder Image].

🔉 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Othe	er
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Watemark	Copy Security
	CIRCULAR WITHDRAW NO REPRODUCTION	Copy Protect
		Page Number
×1	Overlay Create Shared Folder Image	•
		Header/Footer (Machine Setting1>
E 2 2 E I	Edit	Edit
Printer View Printer Information	For the functions that are set to the printer, settings of those fun	

6 In the application software, execute printing.

The [Create Overlay File] window appears.

7 Enter the file name and save the file.

The overlay image is saved in the shared folder. From then on, when you select [Print Host Image] in [Overlay] in the [Stamp/Composition] tab, the saved overlay image is displayed in the list and is also available.

Adding the print date/time or page number ([Date/Time]/[Page Number])

You can add the print date/time or page number to your printouts. If necessary, you can select the print position and format of the text.

Date/Time



Page Number





👷 My Tab 🛛 Basic 🛛 Layout 🛛 Finish 🖉 Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
8 [°] 1/2x11 (215 9x279 4 mm)	Wetemark WEENT CIRCULAR WITHDRAW NORPRODUCTION TOP SECRET Edit	Copy Securty
	Overlay None	Edt Header/Footer (Machine Setting1> *
Printer Information	Edit For the functions that are set to be the printer, settings of those functions	Edt

As necessary, click [Edit...] to change the print position and format of the text.

Date/Time	Page Number
Format	Starting Page
07/1/23	1 ≑ [199999]
Edit	Starting Page Number
	1 🚖 [199999]
Pages	Cover Mode
All Pages 🔹	Print on Front and Back Cover
Text Color	Text Color
Black 👻	Black
Print Position	Print Position
Top Left 🗸	Top Left

Settings	Description
[Date/Time]	Change the print position or format of the date/time.
[Format]	As necessary, click [Edit] to specify the date/time format or whether to print the time.
[Pages]	Specify the range of pages on which the date/time is printed.
[Text Color]	Select the print color for the date/time.
[Print Position]	Specify the print position for the date/time.
[Page Number]	Change the print position of page numbers and the page from which the page number printing starts.
[Starting Page]	Specify the page from which the page number printing starts.
[Starting Page Number]	Specify the page number to be printed on the page specified in [Starting Page].
[Cover Mode]	Select this check box to print page numbers on the front and back covers when they are inserted. In addition, select the format.
[Text Color]	Select the print color for the page numbers.
[Print Position]	Specify the print position for the page numbers.

bizhub C754/C654

Add information to header/footer ([Header/Footer])

You can add and print the date and time and arbitrary text in the top or bottom margin (header/footer) of the original. You must register the information to be added for header and footer in advance to this machine.

Reference

For details on how to register the information to be added for header and footer, refer to page 7-8.



In the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select the [Header/Footer] check box. In addition, select the information you want to add to the header/footer.

👷 My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other				
8_1/2x11	(215.9x	:279.4 n	ım)		Favorite Setting	Untitled	i	•	Add		Edit
8 1/2x11	(215.9x	279.4 n	ım)		Watemark			Cop	y Securit	,	
					CIRCULAR			1	Copy P	rotect	
					K NO REPROD		-		E	dit	
		1			Edit				e/Time e Numbe	r	
	Ľ				Overlay				E	idit	
				x1	None		•				
	#							V Hea	der/Foot	er	
	i,p	A						<mac< td=""><td>nine Sett</td><td>ng1></td><td></td></mac<>	nine Sett	ng1>	
	£	2			Edi	t			(dit	
Printe	er View	P	rinter Info	ormation	For the function the printer, setti				, T	D	efault

As necessary, click [Edit...] to change the text color or the range of pages on which the header/footer is printed.

<machine setting1=""></machine>		Obtain Device Information
Print Item	Header	Footer
Add Character	(Unknown)	(Unknown)
Date/Time	(Unknown)	(Unknown)
Serial Number	(Unknown)	(Unknown)
Job Number	(Unknown)	(Unknown)
Account/User Name	(Unknown)	(Unknown)
Print in Header		All Pages Text Color Black
Start Number:		
1		
Edit		

Settings	Description
[Recall Header/Footer]	Select the header/footer to be recalled. If your computer can communicate with this machine, clicking [Obtain De- vice Information] obtains and displays the latest header/footer information registered in this machine.

Settings	Description
[Distribution Control Number]	 Select whether to print copy numbers when printing multiple sets of copies. [Print in Header]: Select this check box to print the copy number in the header. [Print in Footer]: Select this check box to print the copy number in the footer. As necessary, click [Edit] to specify the copy number format and the page from which the copy number printing starts.
[Pages]	Select the range of pages on which the text is printed in the header/footer.
[Text Color]	Select the color of the text to be added to the header/footer.

2.4.7 Deterring unauthorized copying

Printing a concealed security watermark ([Copy Protect])

Text such as "Copy" and "Private" are printed in the background pattern as concealed text. This function is called the Copy Protect function.

When a copy-protected document is copied, the concealed security watermark appears on the entire page, thereby indicating that it is an unauthorized copy.



On the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select the [Copy Security] check box, and then select [Copy Protect].

As necessary, click [Edit...] to specify the text to be printed and the format of the text. For details, refer to page 2-53.

👷 My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other		
8_1/2x11	(215.9)	c279.4 n	ım)		Favorite Setting	Untitle	ł	✓ Add	i Edit
8 1/2x11	(215.9)	c279.4 n	nn)		Watermark			Copy Sec	urity
			_]		CIRCULAR			Сор	y Protect 🗸
					X WITHDRAW X NO REPROD				Edit
		=			K TOP SECRET		•	Date/Time	-
		1	9					Page Nun	Edit
				x 1	Overlay				EOK
	÷	bı		R.	None		•		
	5.E	AD.	121	<u> </u>				Header/F	
	er A	contral .			Edi				Edit
	ŝ	2							Revers
Printe	r View	[P	rinter Info	omation	For the function the printer, setting				Default

Printing a stamp on the entire page ([Stamp Repeat])

Stamp such as "Copy" and "Private" are printed on the entire page.

By printing text such as "Copy" or "Private" as a visible stamp, you can deter unauthorized copying.



On the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select the [Copy Security] check box, and then select [Stamp Repeat].

As necessary, click [Edit...] to specify the text to be printed and the format of the text. For details, refer to page 2-53.

My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	e Stamp/Composition Quality Othe	r
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	✓ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Watemark	Copy Security
	CIRCULAR	Stamp Repeat
	R NO REPRODUCTION	Edit
	Edit	Date/Time
		Page Number
x1	Overlay	
	None	
		Header/Footer
		<machine setting1=""></machine>
6 2 2 6 1	Edit	Edit
Printer View Printer Information	For the functions that are set to the printer, settings of those fun	

Add copy restriction information ([Copy Guard])

Copy Guard is a copy protection function that prints concealed security watermarks such as "Private" or a date in the background to prevent unauthorized copying, and embeds a copy restriction pattern on all printed sheets.

If an attempt is made using a device that supports the copy guard function to copy a sheet that has been copy protected, a copy guard pattern is scanned, the copying process is canceled, and the job is deleted.



Tips

• To use [Copy Guard], you need to install the optional **Security Kit** and enable the Copy Guard function of this machine. For details on how to enable the Copy Guard function, refer to page 7-15.

On the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select the [Copy Security] check box, and then select [Copy Guard]. As necessary, click [Edit...] to specify the text to be printed and the format of the text. For details, refer to page 2-53.

Printing Preferences		×
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Watemark	Copy Security
	CIRCULAR	Copy Guard
	X NO REPRODUCTION X TOP SECRET	
	Edit	Date/Time
	Overlay	Edt
	None	Header/Footer
🛛 🗣 🗛 🔛 🎆		<machine setting1=""> v</machine>
8 2 2 E	Edit	Edit
Printer View Printer Information	For the functions that are set to l the printer, settings of those func	
	C	OK Cancel Help

Add a password ([Password Copy])

Password Copy is a copy protection function that prints concealed security watermarks such as "Private" or a date in the background to prevent unauthorized copying, and embeds a password for the password copy function on all printed sheets.

If an attempt is made using a device that supports the password copy function to copy a sheet that has been prepared for password copy, a password copy pattern is scanned and entry of a password is requested. Copying starts if the correct password is entered.



- ✓ To use [Password Copy], you need to install the optional Security Kit and enable the Password Copy function of this machine. For details on how to enable the Password Copy function, refer to page 7-15.
- 1 On the [Stamp/Composition] tab, select the [Copy Security] check box, and then select [Password Copy].

Printing Preferences		
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
▼ 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Watermark	Copy Security
	CIRCULAR	Password Copy
	NO REPRODUCTION	Edit
	Edit	Date/Time Page Number
	Overlav	Edt
x1	None -	
		Header/Footer
🛯 🗅 📲 🗛 🖪 🌞		<machine setting1=""></machine>
	Edit	Edit
Printer View Printer Information	For the functions that are set to be a the printer, settings of those function	
		OK Cancel Help

- 2 Enter the password to be embedded (using up to eight characters), and then click [OK].
 - → As necessary, specify the text to be printed and the format of the text. For details, refer to page 2-53.

Copy Security	Password
Password Copy 🗸 🗸	•••••
	Max. 8
vint Item Detail Settings	
Characters	Serial Number
Invalid copy	Distribution Control Number
Date/Time	Start Number:
Format:	1
07/1/23	Edit
Edit	Job Number

Configuring the print settings for Copy Security

When printing a copy security pattern on sheets, you can set the text to be printed and the format of the text as necessary.

1 On the [Stamp/Composition] tab, check the [Copy Security] box, and then click [Edit...].

Rinting Preferences		×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Watermark	Copy Security
	CIRCULAR	Copy Protect 🗸
	WITHDRAW NO REPRODUCTION TOP SECRET	Edit
	Edit	Date/Time
	Overlay	Edt
x1	None -	
		Header/Footer
D 💱 🕸 🛛 🐝		<machine setting1=""> v</machine>
🖬 🖉 🥵 🖪 🔳	Edit	Edit
Printer View Printer Information	For the functions that are set to be the printer, settings of those function	
		OK Cancel Help

- 2 In the [Print Item] tab, select the item to be printed.
 - → Items that can be specified vary depending on the selected copy security function.

t Copy Security Copy Security Copy Protect	Password Max. 8	
Print Item Detail Settings	Serial Number	
Date/Time Format: 107/1/23	Distribution Control Number Start Number: 1 Edt Dio Number	
	Obtain Device Information Default	
	OK Cancel Help	

Settings	Description
[Characters]	 Select this check box to print a text. In addition, select the text you want to print. You can select the text to be printed from the registered preset stamps and stamps registered by users. If your computer can communicate with this machine, clicking [Obtain Device Information] obtains and displays the latest stamp information registered in this machine.
[Date/Time]	Select this check box to add the print date/time. As necessary, click [Edit] to specify the format.
[Serial Number]	Select this check box to print the serial number of this machine.
[Distribution Control Number]	Select this check box to print copy numbers when printing multiple sets of copies. As necessary, click [Edit] to specify the start number and the number of digits.
[Job Number]	Select this check box to print the job numbers managed in this machine.

3 In the [Detail Settings] tab, set the print format.

→ Items that can be specified vary depending on the selected copy security function.

dit Copy Security	×
Copy Security	Password Max. 8
Print Item Detail Settings	Pattern Overwrite
Text Size	Front (Overwrite) Background Pattern (Machine Setting1>
Pattem Color Black Adjust Color	Pattern ▼ Emboss Text ▼
	Default
	OK Cancel Help

Settings	Description
[Angle]	Select the angle of the text to be printed.
[Text Size]	Select the size of the text to be printed.
[Pattern Color]	Select the color of the copy security pattern. As necessary, click [Adjust Color] to adjust the density and contrast.
[Pattern Overwrite]	Select whether to compose the copy security pattern on the front or back side of the original.
[Background Pattern]	Select the copy security pattern from the background patterns registered in this machine.
[Pattern]	Select whether the text pattern is embossed or outlined when the original is subjected to unauthorized copying.

4 Click [OK].

Inserting front and back covers ([Front Cover]/[Back Cover])

You can insert cover sheets, which may be different from those used for the body, before the first page and after the end page of the original.

The front and rear cover sheets can be a paper different from body pages (in paper color and thickness). You can print them at a time.



- 1 In [Paper Tray] in the [Basic] tab, select the paper tray for printing the body pages.
 - Printing Preferences 2 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode Stamp/Composition Quality Other ✓ Add... Edit... Favorite Setting Untitled al Orienta Output M O Portrait
 O Landscape Print Original Size User Settings... 8 1/2x11 Authentication/Account Track... 🐥 Paper Siz Same as Original Siz [1...9999] Zoom [25...400%] Auto
 Manual 및및 Collate 100 📫 4 C Offse Paper Tray ĘĘ A. 1 JU. per Type 1 8 5 R 1 Paper Settings for Each Tray... Printer Information Default OK Cancel Help
 - → You cannot select [Auto].

- 2 In the [Cover Mode] tab, select the [Front Cover] or [Back Cover] check box.
 - → If necessary, you can select whether to print the original on the inserted sheets or to leave them blank. When the inserted sheets are printed, the first page of the original is printed on the front cover and the last page of the original is printed on the back cover.
 - → In [Front Cover Tray] or [Back Cover Tray], select the paper tray for the paper to be used as the front cover or the back cover.

My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover M	ode Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Front Cover	Per Page Setting
	🛃 Blank 🗸	List 1 v
	Front Cover Tray	Edit List
	Tray2 -	
	Back Cover	Transparency Interleave
	Blank -	A Blank -
X	B Duck cover may	Interleave Tray
	Tray1 -	Tray1 👻
	Front Cover from Post Inserter	Carbon Copy
	Back Cover from Post Inserter	Carbon Copy
i 2 2 🚺 🗌	PI Tray 1	· ·
Printer View Printer Information		Default

Inserting front and back covers ([Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter])

You can insert the optional post inserter paper before the first page or after the last page of the original as the outer front cover.



- 1 In [Paper Tray] in the [Basic] tab, select the paper tray for printing the body pages.
 - → You cannot select [Auto].

6 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm) ¥ 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	avorite Setting Unitled Original Orientation 	Add Edt Output Method Print User Settings Authentication/Account Track.
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Size 8 1/2x11	Print User Settings
	8 1/2x11	
	 raper size 	
	Same as Original Size Zoom [25400%]	 Copies 1 ▲ [19999] 1 ↓ □ Collate
	Paper Tray Tray1	Cffset
	Paper Type Plain Paper	Paper Settings for Each Tray
Printer View Printer Information		Default

- 2 In the [Cover Mode] tab, select the [Front Cover from Post Inserter] or [Back Cover from Post Inserter] check box.
 - → Select the PI trays for paper to be inserted as the front and back covers.

References	×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	fe Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Front Cover
	List 1
	Front Cover Tray Tray1
	Back Cover
	Blank - Blank -
x1	Back Cover Tray Interleave Tray
	Tray1 v Tray1 v
	PI Tray 1 Carbon Copy
	Back Cover from Post Inserter Carbon Copy Settings PI Trav 1
Printer View Printer Information	
Printer information	Default
	OK Cancel Help

Tips

 To use [Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter], the optional Post Inserter is required.
Inserting paper between transparencies ([Transparency Interleave])

When printing on multiple OHP transparencies, you can insert the specified paper between the OHP transparencies. These sheets of paper prevent the OHP transparencies from sticking together due to heat generated during printing or static electricity.



- 1 In [Paper Type] in the [Basic] tab, select [Transparency].
 - → If you select [Transparency], the [Print Type] is set to [1-Sided], and the [Select Color] is set to [Gray Scale].

2	My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other	
8	1/2x11	(215.9	x279.4 n	nm)		Favorite Setting	Untitle	d	Add Edit
8		(215.9	x279.4 n	107) =/		Original Orientatio	it		Output Method
						Original Size 8 1/2x11		-	User Settings
				1		Paper Size			Authentication/Account Track
		Ľ)		Same as Original	Size	•	Copies 1 (19999)
					x1	Zoom [25400%]			
Ē		H	Đ		R	Manual	100	*	Collare ⊡
Ĩ		5.6		123	-	Paper Tray			Coffset
				10) E		Tray1		-	
	-	£	2			Paper Type Plain Paper		Ŧ	Paper Settings for Each Tray
	Printe	r View	P	rinter Inf	omation				Default

- 2 In the [Cover Mode] tab, select the [Transparency Interleave] check box.
 - → In [Interleave Tray], select the paper tray for the paper to be inserted between OHP transparencies.
 - → OHP interleaves are inserted as blank sheets.

Printing Preferences		X
🕵 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	le Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Front Cover	Per Page Setting
	Blank 👻	List 1
	Front Cover Tray	Edit List
	Tray1 v	(m) T
	Blank	Transparency Interleave
x1	Back Cover Trav	Interleave Trav
	Tray1 +	Tray1 -
	Front Cover from Post Inserter	
	PI Tray 1 v	Carbon Copy Carbon Copy Settings
	PI Tray 1	Carbon copy Settings
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

Inserting paper into the specified pages ([Per Page Setting])

Paper different from other pages is inserted into the specified pages.

You can select color paper and thick paper as paper to be inserted. You can also select whether to print the original on the inserted paper.



Create in advance a list that specifies the paper and print settings for each page. When printing on inserted paper, select the list you want to apply to printing.

- 1 In the [Cover Mode] tab, select the [Per Page Setting] check box, then click [Edit List...].
 - → When you have already prepared a list, select the list you want to apply to printing.

Printing Preferences		×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Front Cover	Per Page Setting
	Blank 👻	List 1 👻
	Front Cover Tray	Edit List
	Tray1	Transparency Interleave
	Blank	A Blank
x1	Back Cover Tray	Interleave Tray
	Tray1 👻	Tray1 👻
	Front Cover from Post Inserter	
	Back Cover from Post Inserter	Carbon Copy Carbon Copy Settings
	PI Tray 1 👻	
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

2 Create a list by specifying the paper and print settings for each page.

	Settings List					
Page Number:2-5	List Name	List 1		•	Name	
	Page Number	Print Type	Tab Paper	Paper Tray	Staple	Text on Tab
	Body 1-	2-Sided		Auto		
	2-5	Print Insert	Do Not Use		y Same as	
	Body -End	2-Sided		Auto		
	•		m			Þ
	Up	Down	Add	Delete	Tab Pa;	per Settings
Add/Edit				T-b D		
Page Number						evious Page 👻
2-5 Entry Example 2,4,6-10						evious rage *
Print Type Print Insert		Change Settings	1	Text o	in Tab	
Tab Paper Do Not Use Paper Tray Same as Body		Print Insert		•		
Staple Same as Body						
					Tab Text	Details

Settings	Description				
[Settings List]	The settings for each page are displayed in a list.				
[List Name]	Select the list to be created.				
[Edit List Name]	If necessary, change the list name.				
[Up]/[Down]	These buttons move the order of settings in the list. They do not change the settings.				
[Add]	This button adds the setting to the list.				
[Delete]	This button deletes the setting selected in the list.				
[Tab Paper Settings]	When using index paper, set the number and positions of index tabs.				
Add/Edit]	You can add settings to the [Settings List] or edit settings.				
[Page Number]	Enter the page numbers you want to add. To specify multiple page numbers, separate each number with a comma (for example, "2,4,6") or connect the numbers using a hyphen (for example, "6-10").				
[Change Settings]	 Change the setting for the item selected in the [Add/Edit] list. [Print Type]: Select the print type applied when printing the specified pages. [Paper Tray]: Select the paper tray for printing the specified pages. [Staple]: Select the staple position applied when the specified pages are stapled. 				

3 Click [OK].

2.4.9 Specifying the color and image quality

2

Selecting colors for printing ([Select Color])

Select colors for printing. There are four color modes: [Auto Color] that fits the original color, [Full Color], [Gray Scale], and [2 Color].



In [Select Color] in the [Quality] tab, select a color mode for printing.

2	My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other		
Γ						Favorite Setting	Untitle	d	▼ Add Edit	
						Select Color			Resolution	
		-	_			Auto Color		•	600dpi 🗸	
				≡1.		2 Color			Pattem	
				51		Black+Red			Coarse -	
						Print with B	lack		Image Compression	
		=				Text/Figure		Ŧ	High Compression -	
		_				Qualit	y Adjustm	ient	Glossy Mode	
						Color Settings			Toner Save	
F	_		D-		12121	Document			Edge Enhancement	
þ					P	Photo DTP			Luge Lindicement	
	en B	1.E		1.1	***	Web				
Ľ					+	CAD				
	1	Ł	2						Font Settings	
		_								
Printer View Printer Information						Defau				
-								_	OK Cancel Help	

Tips

- [Auto Color] is a function of the PCL/PS driver.
- [Full Color] is a function of the PS/XPS driver.
- [2 Color] is a function of the PCL driver.

Fine-tuning the image quality according to the original ([Quality Adjustment])

You can fine tune the color image quality according to the original. For example, you can increase the vividness or reduce the color difference.

You can adjust the overall image quality of the original, and you can also adjust in detail the image quality of each element of the original, such as text and photos. When you are using the PCL driver, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



1 In the [Quality] tab, click [Quality Adjustment].

My Ta	b Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality 0	ther	
					Favorite Setting	Untitled		Add Edit
	_				Select Color			Resolution
	-	_	-		Auto Color		•	600dpi
			≡1.		2 Color			Pattern
		= 🗖			Black+Red		Ŧ	Coarse
					Print with Bl	ack		Image Compression
	=				Text/Figure		×.	High Compression
					Quality	y Adjustmen	t) (Glossy Mode
					Color Settings			Toner Save
-	633	Res.		210	Document Photo			Edge Enhancement
E.	242				DTP			
	E.e	A .	.U.J.:	1	Web			
			ΞE	4- E	CAD			
-	£	2						Font Settings
Prir	ter View	F	rinter Info	ormation				Default

- 2 Fine tune the image quality according to the original.
 - → [Simple]: The image quality of the entire original is adjusted. Specify the type of the color profile used for printing.
 - → [Detail]: The image quality of the original is adjusted in detail for each element such as text, photos, figures, tables, and graphs. For each element, specify the type of the color profile used for printing and other profiles to be applied.

Quality Adjustment			×
 Simple Detail 			
Text Photo Figure/Table/	Graph		
Color Matching	Color Balance Other		
Type Auto	•		
	-9 +9	0	
Con Con	-9 +9	0	
	-9 +9	0	Default
	ОК	Cancel	Help

3 Click [OK].

Reference

When you are using the PS driver, you can manage the ICC profiles to be used. For details, refer to page 2-68.

Selecting the optimum color representation for the original ([Color Settings])

Select the optimum settings for the original to print it at the optimum image quality level.

Select one of the following processes according to the original to be printed; the process suitable for originals consisting primarily of text, the process suitable for photos, the process suitable for originals created with DTP, the process suitable for printing Web pages, or the process suitable for printing CAD data.

|--|

In [Color Settings] in the [Quality] tab, select the optimum color setting mode for the original.

Printing Preferences		
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover M	Node Stamp/Composition	Quality Other
	Favorite Setting	🕵 Default Setting 👻 Add Edit
	Select Color	Resolution
	Auto Color	▼ 600dpi ▼
	2 Color	Pattem
	Black+Red	✓ Coarse
	Print with I	Black Image Compression
	Text/Figure	
	Qual	Ity Adjustment
	Color Settings	Toner Save
	Document Photo	Edge Enhancement
	DTP	
In Seat. 🖾 🐔	Web	
	CAD	
		Font Settings
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

Specifying the graphic pattern density ([Pattern]) (PCL/XPS only)

In [Pattern] in the [Quality] tab, select the graphic pattern density.

Printing Preferences			×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	e Stamp/Composition	Quality Other	
	Favorite Setting	🕵 Default Set	ting 👻 Add Edit
	Select Color		Resolution
	Auto Color	-	600dpi -
	2 Color		Pattem
	Black+Red	*	Coarse
	Print with B	lack	Image Compression
	Text/Figure	Ŧ	High Compression -
	Qualit	y Adjustment	Glossy Mode
	Color Settings		Toner Save
	Document Photo		Edge Enhancement
	DTP		
II de Ele ar 🖽 🐔 I	Web CAD		
	CAD		
			Font Settings
Printer View Printer Information			
			Default
			OK Cancel Help

Specifying the compression ratio of graphic images ([Image Compression]) (PCL only)

In [Image Compression] in the [Quality] tab, select whether the quality or printing speed is preferred when the image data contained in the original is compressed.

🔉 M	y Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other		
						Favorite Setting	😫 D	efault Set	ting 👻	Add Edit
						Select Color			Res	plution
		-				Auto Color		•	60	Odpi 👻
			_	=		1 2 Color			Patte	em
				51		Black+Red			Co	arse 💌
						Print with Bl	ack		Imag	e Compression
		=				Text/Figure		Ŧ		h Compression 👻 👻
						Quality	/ Adjustm	ient	ų,	alossy Mode
						Color Settings			1	Toner Save
	1	[100]	Res.		2101	Document Photo				dge Enhancement
					5	DTP				
	h E	1.E	A .	J.J.J.;	1	Web				
		E.			÷2	CAD				
		£	2							Font Settings
	Printer	r View	P	rinter Info	omation					Default

Making the image glossy ([Glossy Mode])

Images are printed with a glossy finish.



In the [Quality] tab, select the [Glossy Mode] check box.

Printing Preferences			×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover 1	Node Stamp/Composition	Quality Other	
	Favorite Setting	Untitled	Add Edit
	Select Color		Resolution
	Auto Color	•	600dpi -
	2 Color		Pattern
	Black+Red	Ŧ	Coarse •
		llack	Image Compression
	Text/Figure	Ŧ	High Compression
	Quali	ty Adjustment	Glossy Mode
	Color Settings		Toner Save
	Document Photo		Edge Enhancement
	DTP		
🗨 📲 🗛 🖫 📢	Web CAD		
			Font Settings
Printer View Printer Information			Default
			OK Cancel Help

Tips

• This function is enabled when [Print Type] is set to [1-Sided].

Preventing the generation of white space around images ([Auto Trapping]/[Black Over Print]) (PS only)

The generation of white space on the boundary between different colors or around characters is prevented.



In the [Quality] tab, select the [Auto Trapping] check box or configure the [Black Over Print] setting.

- Select the [Auto Trapping] check box to superimpose neighboring colors to print so as to prevent white space being generated around a picture.
- Select the [Black Over Print] check box to superimpose black color on a neighboring color to print so as to prevent white space being generated around black characters or figures. You can select whether to print black only around the characters or around both characters and figures.

Rinting Preferences		×
Advanced 🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish	Cover Mode Stamp/Composition	Quality Other
	Favorite Setting Untitled	✓ Add Ed≹
	Select Color	Resolution
	Auto Color	
		Auto Trapping
	Quality Adjustment	Black Over Print
		Text 💌
		Glossy Mode
	Color Settings	Toner Save
	Document Photo	Edge Enhancement
	DTP Web	
비 민준 사 비 🐪	CAD	
		Font Settings
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help
		OK Cancel Help

Saving toner ([Toner Save])

Selecting the [Toner Save] check box in the [Quality] tab adjusts the printing density in order to save the amount of toner consumed.

👷 My Tab 🛛 Basic 🛛 Layout 🛛 Finish 🖉 Cover	Mode Stamp/Composition Quality Other	er
	Favorite Setting Untitled	Add Edit
	Select Color	Resolution
		▼ 600dpi ▼
	2 Color	Pattem
	Biddet Hidd	▼ Coarse ▼
		Image Compression
	Quality Adjustment	Glossy Mode
	Color Settings	Toner Save
	Photo	Edge Enhancement
	DTP	
	Web CAD	
2 % E I		Font Settings
Printer View Printer Information		Default

Sharpening the border between text etc. ([Edge Enhancement])

Sharpen the edges of images such as text in the table and graphics to improve legibility.



In the [Quality] tab, select the [Edge Enhancement] check box.

Printing Preferences		×
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
	Favorite Setting Untitled	▼ Add Edit
	Select Color	Resolution
	Auto Color 🔹	600dpi 👻
	2 Color	Pattern
	Black+Red v	Coarse -
		Image Compression High Compression
	Text/Figure 👻	
	Quality Adjustment	Glossy Mode
	Color Settings	Toner Save
	Photo	Edge Enhancement
	DTP Web	
	CAD	
		Font Settings
Printer View Printer Information		Default
		OK Cancel Help

Specifying font processing ([Font Settings]) (PCL/PS only)

Specify how the fonts are processed for printing.

1 In the [Quality] tab, click [Font Settings].

2

0	My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other	
Г						Favorite Setting	🕵 D	efault Set	etting
						Select Color			Resolution
		-	-	- 1		Auto Color		•	600dpi -
		=		=		1 2 Color			Pattern
				51		Black+Red		Ŧ	Coarse
						Print with B	lack		Image Compression
						Text/Figure		Ŧ	High Compression
		_				Qualit	v Adjustn	nent	Glossy Mode
						Color Settings			Toper Save
Ē	_		-			Document			Edge Ephancement
		8			P	Photo			Edge Enhancement
11	- I	5.0			100	Web			
			A		+-(T)	CAD			
	-	Ł	2						Font Settings
		_			_				
	Printe	r View	P	rinter Info	omation				Default

- 2 Change how the fonts are processed for printing.
 - → PCL driver

Font Settings	×
Download Font Format	
Outline -	
Use Printer Fonts	
TrueType Font Substitution Table	
TrueType Font	Printer Font to Use
Aharoni	Do Not Use
Andalus	Do Not Use
Angsana New	Do Not Use
AngsanaUPC	Do Not Use
Aparajta	Do Not Use
Font Substitution Settings	
TrueType Font	Printer Font to Use
Aharoni	Do Not Use 👻
ОК	Cancel Default Help

→ PS driver

ont Settings
Download Fort Format
Use Printer Fonts
OK Cancel Default Help

Settings	Description
[Download Font Format]	Select a type of fonts to be downloaded from the PC to this machine.
[Use Printer Fonts]	Select this check box to replace TrueType fonts with printer fonts during printing. Use of printer fonts increases the printing speed. In normal printing operations, we recommend that you select this check box.
[TrueType Font Substitu- tion Table] (PCL only)	Set this table when you want to specify the printer fonts that replace Tru- eType fonts. From the list, select the TrueType font, then in [Printer Font to Use], select the printer font with which you want to replace the TrueType font.

3 Click [OK].

Tips

 If characters are garbled in an environment using the PCL driver, we recommend that you select [Bitmap] in [Download Font Format] and clear the [Use Printer Fonts] check box.

Preventing failure in printing thin lines ([Thin Line Support]) (PCL only)

You can prevent thin lines from disappearing in reduced-size printing.

On the [Other] tab, select the [Thin Line Support] check box.



Tips

• This is effective for thin lines such as table borders created in Excel, but not for thin lines used in illustrations.

Convert colors according to the RGB values of the original. ([Convert to Gray Scale]) (PCL only)

When you open the [Quality] tab and set the [Select Color] to [Auto Color], the image is automatically converted into gray scale and printed if the RGB values of the original are below the thresholds you have set.

On the [Other] tab, check the [Convert to Gray Scale] box and set the threshold (the differential RGB values to be converted into gray scale).



2.4.10 Using ICC Profiles (PS Only)

Specifying the ICC profiles for printing

Specify and print the ICC profiles registered in this machine with the printer driver.

- ✓ To use the new ICC profiles registered this machine, you need to add the ICC profiles to the printer driver in advance. For details, refer to page 2-69.
- 1 In the [Quality] tab, click [Quality Adjustment...].
- 2 Click [Detail] and select the element for which the image quality is adjusted.
- 3 Click the [ICC Profile] tab.

Download Manager
•
*
 Match Paper Color
•
Default

- 4 Specify the settings for [RGB Color], [Destination Profile], and [Simulation Profile].
 - → The ICC profiles registered in the printer driver can be selected.
- 5 Click [OK].

Color processing is performed according to the selected ICC profiles.



To use the ICC profiles registered in this machine for printing, you need to add the ICC profiles to the printer driver in advance.

- ✓ This function is available if the computer can communicate with this machine. The computer communicates with this machine and loads ICC profiles that the machine can use.
- This function cannot be used when this machine is used via a USB connection.
- ✓ To register ICC profiles in this machine, use **Download Manager(bizhub)**. For details on how to register ICC profiles in this machine, refer to the Help for **Download Manager(bizhub)**.
- 1 In the [Quality] tab, click [Quality Adjustment...].
- 2 Click [Manage Profile].
 - → If the Download Manager(bizhub) has been installed and if you click [Download Manager], the Download Manager(bizhub) starts.

) Simple) Detail	Į,	Manage Profile
Text	_ ~ _	Download Manager
Photo Figure/Table/Graph		
Color Matching ICC Profile Other		
Туре		
Auto 👻		
		Default

3 Click the tab and select a color profile type.

IGB Color	Simulation	Destination	n				
Available	Profile				Driver Prof	ile List	
File N	Profile	Location		Add Sel =>	File N	Profile	Location
				Add All =>			
				<= Remove			
						ĺ	New
🛛 🖌 no	ne profile inf ot be aquired inter. To add	from the	- 01		Edit File N	lame	
[N	printer. To add the profile to the list in the driver, click the [New] button and type in [File Name] and [Profile	the T		Profile	e Name		
						Location	
					Disk		Ŧ

- 4 From the [Available Profile] list, select the profile you want to add to the printer driver, then click [Add Sel].
 - → To register the current driver settings as the profile, click [New], then enter the [File Name] and [Profile Name].
 - → To edit the profile name, click [Edit].

GB Color Simulation Destin	ation			
Available Profile		Driver Profile Lis	t	
File N Profile Location	Add Sel =>	File Name	Profile Name	Locati
	Add All =>	JC2001.icc	JC2001_type3	Disk
	<= Remove			•
	- Hellove	•		
			Nev	v
		Edit		
		File Name		
		JC2001.ic	c	
		Profile Nar	ne	
		JC2001_t	/pe3	
		Save Loci	ation	
		Disk	-	
		Diar	*	

5 Click [OK].

2

The profile is added to [Driver Profile List].

2.4.11 Printing Microsoft Excel/PowerPoint data

Printing multiple Excel sheets at one time (in 32-bit system environment only)

When multiple Microsoft Excel sheets with different print settings are printed at one time, this function prevents the sheets from being printed separately.

On the [Other] tab, check the [Excel Job Control] box.

HONICA MINOLTA C364SeriesPCL Printing Pre	eferences
🙎 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting 🖌 Add Edit
▼ 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Excel Job Control
	Remove White Background
	☑ Thin Line Support
x1	
	Convert to Gray Scale
	Threshold Value (difference between RGB values) 5 m 120]
	About
Printer View Printer Information	Default
	OK Cancel Apply Help

The process executed when an overlay image is printed on a PowerPoint original with a white background is optimized. This function prevents the overlay image from being overwritten by the white background of the PowerPoint original.

In the [Other] tab, select the [Remove White Background] check box.



2.4.12 Previewing the Print Image (XPS only)

The XPS driver has a function to preview the print image for your checking.

In the preview window, you can check the print image and delete unnecessary pages.

1 In the [Other] tab, select the [Display the preview when printing] check box.



- 2 In the application software, execute printing. The preview window appears.
- 3 Check the print image, then execute printing.

Docume	nt View Edit Tool Help		C KONICA MINOLTA
+	<pre></pre>	<text><text><text><text><text></text></text></text></text></text>	Columnity 2017inity / flemmedd Prid Sways
E0.6 7	K 4/8	Paper Size 8 Covies 1	Print Settings

No.	Functions			
1	Move this slider to enlarge or reduce the preview.			
2	Click this button to switch the currently displayed page.			
3	Click this button to change the print settings.			
4	Click this button to delete the displayed print job.			
5	Select this menu to start printing.			
6	Select the page to be displayed. You can delete the selected page or pages.			

2.5 Printing options

2.5.1 Making a Trial Printing ([Proof Print])

Proof Print

The Proof Print function is used when printing multiple copies. It allows the printer to output one copy and pause the printing operation before printing the remaining copies.

Because you can check the print result before starting printing the remaining copies from the **Touch Panel**, this function is helpful to prevent a lot of misprints.



How to print from the computer

1 In [Output Method] in the [Basic] tab, select [Proof Print].

Printing Preferences	×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting 👻 Add Edit
7 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Orientation Output Method
	Original Size
	8 1/2x11
	Paper Size Same as Original Size ✓ Same as Original Size ✓
x1	Zoom [25400%] @ Auto 100 2 %
	Manual Proof Print Paper Tray
	Auto
	Paper Type Paper Settings for Each Tray
Printer View Printer Information	Default
	OK Cancel Help

2 Specify the number of copies, then execute printing.

Only one copy is printed. Continue to "Operations on this machine".

Operations on this machine

1 Tap [Job List].

2



2 While [In Progress] is displayed, tap [Release Job].

In Progress	Log	Comm. L				
No. Type	Doc. Name / Destination	Time	No. of Copies	Status/Result		Select Job Ty I All
						Delete
						Increase Priori
						Release Job
					\odot	
						Forward
	All	Scan	Fax	L1 L2)	

3 Select the job you want to print.

Delever			_	_			_
Release Held Jobs To copy one set for proofing, press (Proof Copy).							
No.	Tvpe	Doc. Name / Destination	Time	No. of Copies	Status/Result	_	
0017	PRINTER	Print.txt	10:44		1 Job Stored		
						Delete	
						Change Setting	n,
						Settings	
						Details	
							l
-	_					Cance Start	

- 4 If necessary, tap [Change Setting] to change the print conditions.
- 5 Tap [Start] or press the **Start** key. The remaining copies are printed.

2.5.2 Printing Highly Confidential Documents ([Secure Print])

Secure Print

The Secure Print function allows you to set an ID and a password for print data and to save the data in a box (Secure Print User Box) on this machine. Because the data is not printed within a short time period, this function prevents printed materials from being missing or left unattended.

Since you need to enter the ID and password from the **Touch Panel** to print the data saved in the box, this function is particularly suitable for safely printing highly confidential documents.



Related setting (for the administrator)

• You can limit printing from the computer only to Secure Print. (Default: [No]). For details, refer to page 7-15.

How to print from the computer

1 In [Output Method] on the [Basic] tab, select [Secure Print].



2 Enter the ID and password, then click [OK].

Secure Print ID	Max. 16
Password	1
	Max. 64
Operate the followings panel in order to use th printed by "secure print	ne documents which is
[User Box]button -> [Sy	vstem] -> [Secure _
Save in User Box File Name	Max. 30
User Box Number	Max. 9
	nd [Password] that are

- → If you always use the same ID and password, registering them in advance eliminates the need for entering them each time. For details, refer to page 2-9.
- 3 Execute printing.

2

The data is saved in the Secure Print User Box. Continue to "Operations on this machine".

Operations on this machine

Data printed using the Secure Print function is saved in the Secure Print User Box. To print the saved data, you need to enter the ID and password specified in the printer driver.

For details on the printing procedure, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].

Related setting (for the administrator)

- You can delete all data saved in the Secure Print User Box. For details, refer to page 7-6.
- You can set a time to delete files automatically from the Secure Print User Box (Default: [1 day]). For details, refer to page 7-6.

2.5.3 Saving originals in the Box on this machine ([Save in User Box])

Save in User Box

The Save in User Box function saves print data in a box on this machine. You can also print the data at the same time as it is being saved in the box.

You can use multiple User Boxes for different purposes, for example:

- By saving data in a box that all users can access (Public Box) or in a box that the members of a specific department can access (Group Box), you can distribute the data.
- By saving data in the private box (Personal Box), you can assure security because only you can open the box. The data in the box is not deleted by mistake.



Operations required to use this function

Register the boxes for storing print data on this machine.

For information on the procedure for registering boxes, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].

Reference

You can also register boxes using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

How to print from the computer

- 1 In [Output Method] in the [Basic] tab, select [Save in User Box].
 - → When you want to print the data at the same time it is saved in the box, select [Save in User Box/Print].

Printing Preferences	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting 12 Default Set	ting
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Orientation Portrait Landscape	Output Method
	Original Size 8 1/2x11	Print Secure Print
	Same as Original Size	Save in User Box
	Manual Paper Tray	Proof Print ID&Print
	Paper Type Pfain Paper →	Paper Settings for Each Tray
Printer View Printer Information		Default OK Cancel Help

- 2 Enter the file name and the box number of the save location, click [OK].
 - → Use a file name that helps you locate the data in the box.

User Settings
Secure Print
Secure Print ID
Max. 16
Password
Max. 64
Operate the followings on the printer's control panel in order to use the documents which is printed by "secure print". [User Box]putton -> [System] -> [Secure +
Save in User Box File Name
Max 30
User Box Number
Max. 9
Type in [File Name] and [User Box Number] that are used with [Save in User Box].
OK Cancel Default Help

- → If you always use the same file name and box number, registering them in advance eliminates the need for entering them each time. For details, refer to page 2-9.
- 3 Execute printing.

2

The data is saved in the box on this machine.

Using data saved in a box

You can print or send data saved in a box via E-mail or fax.

- For information on how to print data saved in a box, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].
- For information on how to print data saved in a box, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].

Printing when authentication is set

When printing a document in an environment where user authentication or account track is employed, you need to send the authentication information (user name and password) to this machine to execute printing. This requirement limits the users who can use this machine, preventing unauthorized use by a third party.

When this machine receives a print job from a user who is not allowed to print or a print job without authentication information, this machine automatically discards the job.



Tips

• A print job without authentication information is a print job that is sent though its User Authentication/Account Track setting is not correctly configured in the [Configure] tab in the [Properties] window of the printer driver.

Related setting (for the administrator)

• You can specify the action that this machine takes when it receives a print job without authentication information (Default: [Restrict]). For details, refer to page 7-11.

Reference

When printing a highly confidential document in an environment where user authentication or account track is employed, using the ID & Print function enables high security printing. For details, refer to page 2-82.

If the quick authentication for printing server is installed, you can start printing by authentication with only the user name but without password entry. How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

Operations required to use this function

In the [Configure] tab of the printer driver, check that the User Authentication/Account Track setting is correctly configured.

- 1 Display the [Properties] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Properties] window, refer to page 2-94.
- 2 In [Device Option] in the [Configure] tab, check that the User Authentication/Account Track setting is correctly configured for your operating environment.
 - → If it is not configured correctly, select [User Authentication] or [Account Track] from the list, then change the relevant setting in [Setting].

eneral Sharing	Ports Adv	vanced Color N	lanagement Se	curity Configure	Settings	
C754			₿HDD	Device Option Post Inserter Saddle Ka Hard Disk Secure Print Only Single Sign-On User Authentication Public User Account Track Setting ON (MFP)	Disable on ON (MFP) Allow Enable	T T
Paper Tray	Size	Direction	Paper Type			*
Tray1	A4	LEF	Plain Paper			=
Trav2	A4	D LEF	Plain Paper			-
Tray3	A4	LEF	Plain Paper			
Tray4	A4	🖵 LEF	Plain Paper			-
Paper T	ray Settings	Set Pape	er Name by User.			
Obtain De	vice Information	n Encrypt	ion Passphrase		ware Tools eb Connection	•
	n Settings					Start

3 Click [OK].

1 In the [Basic] tab, click [Authentication/Account Track...].

Printing Preferences	×
👷 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	le Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Vefault Setting Vefault Setting Add
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Orientation Output Method Output Method Output Method Output Method Print Print
	Original Size User Settings 8 1/2x11 Authentication/Account Track Same as Original Size Copies
	Zoom [25400%]
	Paper Tray Auto Paper Type
Printer View Printer Information	Plain Paper Plain Paper Settings for Each Tray Default
	OK Cancel Help

- 2 When user authentication is enabled, select [Recipient User], then enter the user name and password.
 - → When this machine is accessible to public users (unregistered users), selecting [Public User] enables you to execute printing without entering the user name and password.
 - → When an external authentication server is used, click [Server Setting...] and select the authentication server.

User Authentication	Account Track
Public User	Department Name
Recipient User	
User Name Password	Password
Password	
Server Setting	
	Verify
Enable Single Sign-On function	ality for printing functions
Please enter [User Name] a	and [Password].
V	*

- → If you always use the same user name and password, registering them in advance eliminates the need for entering them each time. For details, refer to page 2-9.
- 3 If account track is enabled, enter the account name and password.

	Account Track
) Public User	Department Name
Recipient User	
User Name	Password
Password	
Server Setting	
	Verify
	veniy
Enable Single Sign-On functionalit	
] Enable Single Sign-On functionalit	y for printing functions
	y for printing functions

- → If you always use the same account name and password, registering them in advance eliminates the need for entering them each time. For details, refer to page 2-9.
- 4 Click [OK].
 - → If your computer can communicate with this machine, clicking [Verify] executes authentication based on the authentication information that has been input. You can check the authentication information for errors before starting printing.
- 5 Execute printing.

Printing starts successfully when the authentication information is judged correct.

2.5.5 Printing at the Same Time as Authentication (ID & Print)

ID & Print

The ID & Print function saves print data in a box on this machine in an environment where user authentication is employed. Because the data is not printed within a short time period, this function prevents printed materials from being missing or left unattended.

Since you need to be authenticated in this machine to print the data saved in the box, this function is suitable for safely printing highly confidential documents. When you are successfully authenticated, the print data of the login user is automatically printed. This enhances security as well as ensures smooth operation.



Related setting (for the administrator)

- You can specify the action that this machine takes when the ID & Print function is used. For details, refer to page 7-10.
- You can set a time to delete files automatically from the ID & Print User Box (Default: [1 day]). For details, refer to page 7-7.
- Select whether to ask the user if they want to delete the file from the ID & Print User Box after it is printed or to always delete the file without making confirmation (Default: [Confirm with User]). For details, refer to page 7-7.

How to print from the computer

1 In the [Basic] tab, click [Authentication/Account Track...].

🗶 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Vefault Setting Vefault Setting Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Orientation Output Method Output Method Dandscape Print
	Original Size User Settings 8 1/2x11 Authentication/Account Track Cooles Cooles
	Zoom (25400%)
	Paper Tray Offset
6 2 2 6 1	Paper Type Plain Paper Paper Settings for Each Tray
Printer View Printer Information	Default

- 2 Enter the authentication information, and click [OK].
 - → For details, refer to page 2-79.

	Account Track
Public User	Department Name
Recipient User	
User Name	Password
Password	
Server Setting	
	Verfv
Enable Single Sign-On functionalit	y for printing functions
	[Password].
Please enter [User Name] and	
Please enter [User Name] and	Ŧ

3 In [Output Method], select [ID&Print].

My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting V Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Orientation Output Method
	Original Size Print 8 1/2x11 Secure Print
	Paper Size Same as Original Size Zoom [25400%] Save in User Box Save in User Box
	Zoom [25400%] Auto Manual X Proof Print
	Paper Tray Auto
i 2 x i 1	Paper Type Plain Paper Plain
Printer View Printer Information	Default

4 Execute printing.

The data is saved in the ID & Print User Box. Continue to "Operations on this machine".

Operations on this machine

1 Tap the keyboard icon in the [User Name] field, and enter the user name and password.

	Job List
Documents stored in the ID & Print User Box can be printed upon successful authentication. Enter user name and password and then touch [Login] or press the [ID] key.	07/26/2011 y 18:46 M Memory C 100% K ==1
ID & Print THE Access Access Basic Screen	Public User Access
User Name	
Password	C C
	Login

- 2 Check that [ID & Print/MFP Access] is selected in [ID & Print], and tap [Login].
 - → When you select [Access Basic Screen] in [ID & Print], you can log in without starting printing.
 - → You can change the default value for [ID & Print] (Default: [Print & Access Basic Screen]) if necessary. For details, refer to page 7-11.

When you are successfully authenticated, all data items saved in the ID & Print User Box are printed.

Reference

To print a particular data item in the ID & Print User Box, open the ID & Print User Box and select the data item. For details on the printing procedure, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].

Operations on this machine (when an Authentication Unit is used)

When an optional **Authentication Unit (biometric type)** or **Authentication Unit (IC card type)** is used, you can execute printing just by touching the authentication unit with your finger or IC card.

- ✓ You may be required to enter the user name and password before touching the unit with your finger or IC card due to the authentication settings. Tap the keyboard icon in the [User Name] or [Password] field, and enter the user name or password.
- 1 Check that [Authentication Device] is selected in [Authentication Method].

		Job List
.		07/26/2011 Y 12:49 M Memory C 100% K
Authentication Method	ID & Print	
Authentication Device	ID & Print/ MFP Access	
ID & PW	Access Basic Screen	
User Name		
Password		
		C

- 2 Check that [ID & Print/MFP Access] is selected in [ID & Print], and touch the **Authentication Unit** with your finger or IC card.
 - → When you select [Access Basic Screen] in [ID & Print], you can log in without starting printing.
 - → You can change the default value for [ID & Print] (Default: [Print & Access Basic Screen]) if necessary. For details, refer to page 7-11.

When you are successfully authenticated, all data items saved in the ID & Print User Box are printed.

Related setting (for the administrator)

• When the ID & Print function is used on an **Authentication Unit**, you can select whether to request user authentication for printing each data item or to allow the user to print all data items once the user is authenticated (Default: [Print All Jobs]). For details, refer to page 7-10.

2.5.6 Printing in the Single sign-on environment of Active Directory

Single sign-on

When the print service of this machine joins a domain of Active Directory, users can execute printing from computers in the same domain without entering the authentication information (user name and password). The authentication information entered in the login page on the computer is used for this authentication.



Operations required to use this function

In the [Configure] tab of the printer driver, check that the User Authentication and Single sign-on settings are correctly configured.

- 1 Display the [Properties] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Properties] window, refer to page 2-94.
- 2 In [Device Option] in the [Configure] tab, check that the [User Authentication] and [Single Sign-On] settings are correctly configured for your operating environment.
 - → If they are not configured correctly, select [User Authentication] and [Single Sign-On] from the list, and then change the relevant settings in [Setting].
 - → You can set the [Single Sign-On] option to [Enable] if you have set the [User Authentication] to [ON (External Server)] or [ON (MFP) + ON (External Server)].

ral Sharin	g Ports A	dvanced Color M	anagement Se	cunty Configure	Settings	
C754			BHDD	Device Option		
			BHUU	Post Inserter Saddle Kit	PI-505 SD-512	*
				Hard Disk	Installed Off	
		and the second s		Secure Print Only Single Sign-On	Enable	
				User Authenticatio		Server)
				Public User Account Track	Allow	-
-		1 4	- I		210010	
				Setting		
				Enable		-
Paper Tray Tray	Information	Direction	Paper Type			
Trav1	A4		Plain Paper			
Trav2	A4		Plain Paper			E
Trav3	A4	1 LEF	Plain Paper			
	A4	D LEF	Plain Paper			-
Tray4		Set Pane	r Name by User.			
	Trav Settings					
Paper	Tray Settings	Encrypti	on Passphrase	Soft	ware Tools	
Paper	Tray Settings evice Informati	Encrypti	on Passphrase			
Paper		Encrypti	on Passphrase		ware Tools eb Connection	
Paper		Encrypti	on Passphrase			

Printing procedure

2

1 In the [Basic] tab, click [Authentication/Account Track...].

Printing Preferences	
2 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting V Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Original Orientation Output Method Output Method Output Method Output Method
	Original Size User Settings 8 1/2x11 Authentication/Account Track Paper Size
	Same as Original Size Copies Zoom [25400%] 1 [19993] @ Auto 100 %
	Paper Tray Offset
	Paper Type Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper
Printer View Printer Information	Default
	OK Cancel Help

- 2 Check [Enable Single Sign-On functionality for printing functions] box, and click [OK].
 - \rightarrow The login name in the PC is displayed in the [User Name] field.

User Authentication	Account Track
Public User	Department Name
Recipient User	
User Name	Password
Password	
Server Setting	
	Verify
Enable Single Sign-On functionality f	or printing functions
	Pareword
Please enter [User Name] and [F	w

- 3 Click [OK].
- 4 Execute printing. Printing starts.

2.5.7 Printing on banner paper

Printing on banner paper

This machine accommodates paper with a length of up to 47-1/4 inches (1,200 mm) in the Bypass Tray.



Printable paper

Paper width	Paper length	Paper weight
8-1/4 to 11-11/16 inches (210 to 297 mm)	18 to 47-1/4 inches (457.3 to 1200 mm)	33-13/16 to 55-7/8 lb (127 g/m ² to 210 g/m ²) (Using the printer driver, select the paper type appropriate for the weight of the banner paper to be used. 32-3/16 lb to 41-3/4 lb (121 g/m ² to 157 g/m ²): Thick 1+, Thick 1+ (Side 2) 42 lb to 55-5/8 lb (158 g/m ² to 209 g/m ²): Thick 2, Thick 2 (Side 2) 55-7/8 lb (210 g/m ²): Thick 3, Thick 3 (Side 2))

Tips

• When printing data on banner paper, select a paper type appropriate to the banner paper using the printer driver. Then, the [Paper Tray] is set to [Bypass Tray] and [Resolution] is fixed to [600dpi].

How to print on banner paper

Specify the banner paper size.

2

- 1 On the **Touch Panel** of this machine, tap [Utility] [Banner Printing].
- 2 Select [Allow], then tap [OK].

	To activate b	anner printing,	choose [All	ow] .	
Bookmark	Utility > Ba	nner Printing			
Display Keypad			_		
Utility					
+					
Banner Printing		_			
		Allow		Restrict	
	07/26/2011	12:53			ОК

- 3 Check that the screen waiting for banner printing job has appeared.
 - → If a job is received for printing on paper of a non-banner size while a banner print job is expected, that job is discarded.
 - \rightarrow When a banner paper print job is queued, the machine cannot receive a facsimile.

Banner Printing. A banner print job is in the queue.		07/26/2011 ۲ 12:57 M	(<u> </u>
is in the queue.		Memory C 100% P	
Touch [Exit] to cancel banner printing.			
	Exit		

When you have finished the above settings, start to print from the PC.

4 In [Original Size] in the [Basic] tab, select [Custom Size].



5 Specify the width and length of the banner paper, and click [OK].

Custom Size Settings	×
Width 11.692 inch [3.54412.598]	Unit
Length 45.244 inch [5.50047.244]	inch
When you specify the paper size a 11.694inch (210-297mm) and Leng	
OK Cancel Defa	ault Help

The [Confirm setting changes] dialog box appears.

6 Click [Yes].



The [Paper Tray], [Paper Type], and [Print Type] settings are switched.

- → Click the [Paper Settings for Each Tray...], and change the type of papers on the Bypass Tray according to the weight of print papers.
- → If the [Resolution] is set to [1200dpi (High Quality)], it is switched to [600dpi].
- 7 Execute printing.

A message appears on the Touch Panel to prompt you to load papers.

- 8 Load the banner paper into the **Bypass Tray**.
 - → For information on how to load banner paper into the Bypass Tray, refer to [User's Guide: Introduction (Trademark Licenses)].

9 When you have loaded a banner paper, tap [Complete].

Correctly position paper in the bypass tray. Banner P : X 47%, Thick 1+ Y 11%	Joh List
	Complete

Printing on the banner paper starts. Support the ejected banner paper by hand. To continue printing, execute printing from the computer.

10 Tap [Exit].

2

fouch [Exit] to cancel banner printing.	
Exit	

A message confirming the end of banner printing is displayed. To terminate printing, tap [Yes].

2.5.8 Changing the encryption passphrase

Encryption Passphrase

An encryption passphrase is information used for encrypting the password that is sent to this machine for printing using the printer driver.

When printing is executed, some functions may send an authentication password such as the user password or account password. The password is encrypted using the encryption passphrase specified in advance in this machine. However, you can change the encryption passphrase when necessary.

To change the encryption password, you need to set the same encryption passphrase in this machine and in the printer driver.

Tips

• If the encryption passphrase set in this machine differs from the one set in the printer driver, printing cannot be executed because this machine cannot decrypt the encrypted password.

Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

- 1 Tap [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Security Settings] [Driver Password Encryption Setting].
- 2 Select [User-Defined] and tap [Encryption Passphrase].

	To change the encryption passphrase of the printer driver, select loser specified, and then set the encryption passphrase.
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Security Settings > Driver Password Engryption Setting
Display Keypad	User-Defined Use Factory Default
Utility Administrator	
Settings	Encryption Pessphrase
Settings	
Setting	
	07/26/2011 12:59

- 3 Tap [Encryption Passphrase] and enter the new encryption passphrase (up to 20 characters).
 - → Tap [Encryption Passphrase Confirmation], then enter the encryption passphrase again.
 - → An encryption passphrase using a series of the same letters (for example, "1111") is invalid.

Use the keyboard or keybad to enter the new encryption taiste tasconsista, Process to the enter the entryption passbyrase.
Administrator Settings > Driver Password Encryption Settings > Encryption Passphrase
Passphrase
Encryption Pass- phrase confirmation
← → lete
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - = `
qwertyuiopEl\
asdfghjkl;'
Z X C V b n n , . / Shift
07/26/2011 13:00 @A Eglarge Cancel OK

4 Tap [OK].

This sets the encryption passphrase.

Setting the printer driver

- Do not perform the following steps when you do not want to change the encryption passphrase on this machine.
- If OpenAPI communication is SSL-encrypted and the device information can be automatically obtained from the printer driver, the encrypted passphrase can be obtained from this machine. For details on how to encrypt OpenAPI communication with SSL, refer to page 7-12.
- 1 Display the [Properties] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Properties] window, refer to page 2-94.
- 2 On the [Configure] tab, select the [Encryption Passphrase] check box and enter the encryption passphrase (using up to 20 alphanumeric characters) that you have set on this machine.
 - → Do not select the [Encryption Passphrase] check box unless you want to change the encryption passphrase on this machine.

eral Sharin	g Ports	Advanced Color M	lanagement Se	cunty Configure	Settings		
C754			BHOD	Device Option Model Paper Source Un Finisher Punch Unit Punch Unit Punch Z-Fold Un Post Inserter Saddle Kit Hard Disk Setting C754	FS-535 PK-521 (2	/3-Hole) /3-Hole)	* III *
Paper Tray	Information	Direction	Paper Type				*
Tray1	A4	LEF	Plain Paper				
Tray2	A4		Plain Paper				E
Trav3	A4	D LEF	Plain Paper				
Tray4	A4		Plain Paper				-
Paper	Tray Setting:	s Set Pape	er Name by User.				
Obtain D	evice Inform	ation Encrypt	ion Passphrase		tware Tools /eb Connection		•
Obta	in Settings					Start	

3 Click [OK].
Printing procedure

1 On the [Basic] tab, set up the print function which uses the password for [Secure Print], [Save in User Box], [User Authentication] and others.

Printing Preferences	×
🙎 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	e Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8_1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting V Add Edit
8 1/2x 11 (215 9x279.4 mm)	Original Orientation Output Method Image: Second State Output Method Strick 11 Image: Second State Same as Original Size Copies Zoom [25.400%] Image: Second State Image: Second State Image: Second State
	Paper Tray Offset
	Paper Type Plain Paper Plain Paper
Printer View Printer Information	Default
	OK Cancel Help

2 Execute printing.

The password is encrypted with the encryption passphrase being set by the printer driver, and the encrypted password is transmitted to this machine. The password is decrypted with the encryption passphrase being set on this machine, and it is printed out or stored in the box.

2.5.9 Printing using the PPD driver for applications

PPD driver for applications

Install the PPD driver for applications when using PageMaker or other applications that requires a PPD.

PPD registration destination (Example: Adobe PageMaker)

- For PageMaker 6.0: Copy the PPD file to RSRC\PPD4 under the folder to which PageMaker is installed.
- For PageMaker 6.5 and 7.0: Copy the PPD file to RSRC\<Language>\PPD4 under the folder to which PageMaker is installed.

Printing procedure

The following describes the printing procedure in which the PPD driver for applications is used.

- 1 Open the data in the application. From the menu bar, click [File] [Print].
- 2 From the [PPD] box in the print window, select this machine.
- 3 In [Paper] or [Features], configure the print settings.
- 4 Click the [Print] button to execute printing.

2.6 Setting items in the printer driver

2.6.1 [Properties] Window of the printer driver

How to display the [Properties] window

The printer driver has two windows for configuring settings: the [Properties] window and the [Print Setting] window. This section describes the [Properties] window.

In the [Properties] window, you can configure settings for the optional environment of this machine or Windows functions. To display the [Properties] window, take the following steps:

- **1** Display the printer window.
 - → If the Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 Revision 2 is running, select [Devices and Printers] from the Start menu.

If [Devices and Printers] is not displayed, select [Control Panel] - [Hardware and Sound], and click [View devices and printers].

→ In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Control Panel] - [Hardware and Sound] - [Printer] from the Start menu.

When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].

- → In Windows XP/Server 2003, open the Start menu, then click [Printers and Faxes]. If [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed, click [Control Panel] - [Printers and Other Hardware] - [Printers and Faxes]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 2 Open Printer Properties.
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and from [Printer Properties], click the displayed printer name.
 - → In Windows XP/Vista/Server 2003/Server 2008, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Properties].

The [Properties] window appears.

Tabs provided by Windows

The [General], [Sharing], [Port], [Advanced], [Color Management], and [Security] tabs are provided by Windows.

You can print a test page, configure printer sharing, configure printer ports, etc. For details, refer to the Windows manuals.

2.6.2 Available operations in the [Configure] tab

In the [Configure] tab, you can register the options installed in this machine, assignment of paper types to the paper trays, and other information in the printer driver.

🖶 KONICA MINO	LTA C754Serie	sPCL Propertie	15				×
General Sharing	Ports Adva	anced Color Ma	anagement S	ecunty Configure	Settings		
C754			Birdo)	Device Option Model Paper Source Ur Finisher Punch Unit Punch Z-Fold Ur Post Inserter Saddle Kit Hard Disk Setting C754		C754 LU-204 FS-535 PK-521 (2/3-Hole) ZU-606 (2/3-Hole) PI-505 SD-512 Installed	×
Paper Tray Ir Tray	Size	Direction	Paper Typ	e			*
Tray1	A4	D LEF	Plain Pape	r			=
Tray2	A4	LEF	Plain Pape				=
Tray3	A4	LEF	Plain Pape				
Tray4	A4	LEF	Plain Pape	r			-
Paper Tr	ray Settings	Set Paper	Name by User	r			
		Encryptic	n Passphrase	So	ftware Tools		
Obtain Dev	vice Information			V	Veb Connectio	n	•
Obtain	Settings						Start
				ОК	Ca	Incel Apply	Help

Settings	Description				
[Device Option]	The model name, options installed in this machine, and authentication s tings of this machine are displayed. When the settings of this machine cannot be obtained, you need to man ally change the settings. Select the item from the list, and select the setting from [Setting].				
[Paper Tray Information]	The paper types assigned to the paper trays of this machine are displayed. When the settings of this machine cannot be obtained, you need to manually change the settings. In [Paper Tray Settings], change the paper type assignment.				
[Set Paper Name by Us- er]	Register the user paper name used in the printer driver. Set a paper name and a paper type as the custom paper name.				
[Obtain Device Information]	The PC communicates with this machine and obtains the optional device installation information. In [Obtain Settings], set the method of obtaining the information on this machine.				
[Obtain Settings]	Configure the settings for obtaining the information on this machine.				
[Automatic Retrieval Settings]	 Select whether to obtain device information automatically. [Auto]: Select this check box to automatically obtain the information or this machine. [Do not retrieve in Sleep Mode]: Select this check box if you do not wish to release the sleep mode of the machine when automatically obtaining the device information from this machine. If the box is checked, the device information is not obtained when this machine is in the sleep mode. 				
[Destination Settings]	 Set the communication method to get information from this machine. [Device which Connect with Printer Port]: The information is obtained from the print port being set on the [Port] tab of the Fax driver. [Specify IP Address or Printer Name]: Information is obtained by connecting to the device having the IP address or printer name entered. 				
[Read Community Name]	Enter the Read Community Name used for obtaining information from this machine if you have changed the SNMP Read Community Name on this machine.				
[Enter Password to acquire Device Infor- mation]	Enter the password for user authentication if the device information is password-protected against the fax driver.				

Settings	Description
[Encryption Passphrase]	Select this check box when you want to set your own encryption pass- phrase. The encryption passphrase is used for encrypting the authentication pass- word that is sent to this machine for executing printing. In normal circum- stances, the authentication password is encrypted using the encryption passphrase registered in advance in this machine. However, you can change the encryption passphrase when necessary. To change the encryption passphrase, change the setting in this machine, then, in the printer driver, enter the same encryption passphrase as that specified in this machine. For details on how to change the encryption passphrase, refer to page 2-90.
[Software Tools]	You can start up the software tools such as Web Connection.

- When [Auto] in [Obtain Settings...] is enabled and the computer is unable to communicate with this machine, the computer takes a long time to display the [Properties] window or the [Printing Preferences] window.
- If you are using the machine from a Windows XP/Server 2003 PC via USB connection, [Obtain Device Information] cannot be used.

Related setting (for the administrator)

• The device information collection from printer driver can be restricted by password (default: [No]). For details, refer to page 7-11([Assign Account to Acquire Device Info]).

2.6.3 Available operations in the [Settings] tab

In the [Settings] tab, you can change the default settings for how to display confirmation messages and the window for inputting authentication information.



Settings	Description
[EMF Spool]	Select this check box when meta file (EMF) spooling is required in your own system environment.
[Display Constraint Mes- sage]	Select this check box to display a message indicating that you have selected printer driver functions that cannot be used together.
[Display paper set in Print Server Properties]	Select this check box when using the paper added in [Server Properties] in the printer window.
[[Output Method] when printing is preserved]	The [Output Method] settings in the [Basic] tab are saved. This option is helpful when you want to repeat printing with the same output method settings.
[Share Overlay File(s)]	To share overlay files, set a shared folder on the network for storing them.

bizhub C754/C654

Settings	Description
[Authentication Settings]	 Configure the User Authentication/Account Track settings. [Verify Authentication settings before printing]: Select this check box to enable the [Verify] button in the [User Authentication/Account Track] dialog box. [Popup Authentication Dialog when printing]: Select this check box to display the [User Authentication/Account Track] dialog box when starting printing. This option reminds you to enter the user name and password. [Do not allow changes to the [User Name]]: This option restricts changes to [User Name] of [Recipient User] in the [User Authentication/Account Track] dialog box in the [Basic] tab. [Do not allow changes to the [Password]]: This option restricts changes to [Password] of [Recipient User] in the [User Authentication/Account Track] dialog box in the [Basic] tab.
[Secure Print Settings]	 Configure the Secure Print settings. [Secure Print only]: [Output Method] in the [Basic] tab is fixed to [Secure Print]. [Enter ID/PWD to execute secure print]: Select this check box to display the [Secure Print] dialog box when starting secure printing. This option reminds you to enter the ID and password. [Print without Password]: Specify whether to allow users to print without entering the password.
[My Tab Settings]	 Configure the display settings for [My Tab] when using [My Tab] of the printer driver. [Display My Tab]: Select this check box to use [My Tab]. [Share My Tab]: Select this check box to share the settings in [My Tab]. When the printer driver is installed in a client by specifying the shared printer on the server, the [My Tab] settings configured on the server are applied to the client. [Prohibit Editing]: Select this check box to prohibit the clients from editing [My Tab]. [Display Note]: Select this check box to display notes in [My Tab] when [My Tab] is opened.
[Save Custom Size]	If you print on odd size paper, specify the size to register the paper. The registered paper size can be selected from [Original Size] in the [Basic] tab.

- [EMF Spool] is a function of the PCL driver.
- [Save Custom Size...] is a function of the PCL driver.
- To use the EMF spool function with a PS/XPS driver, select the [Enable advanced printing features] check box in the [Advanced] tab to enable the EMF spool function.
- The procedure for opening [Server Properties] is as follows:
- In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, select the desired printer, and click [Print Server Properties] on the toolbar.
- In Windows Vista/Server 2008, right-click on the area that has nothing displayed in the [Printers] window, and click [Run as administrator] - [Server Properties].
- In Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [File] menu, and click [Server Properties].
- The paper set in Print Server Properties for the printer driver is allowable in the following ranges. Custom sizes available in printer driver:

Width: 3-9/16 to 12-5/8 inches (90.0 to 320.0 mm), Length: 5-1/2 to 18 inches (139.7 to 457.2 mm) Banner sizes available in printer driver:

Width: 8-1/4 to 11-11/16 inches (210.0 to 297.0 mm), Length: 18 to 47-1/4 inches (457.3 to 1200.0 mm) Allowable range of large size 1:

Width: 3-9/16 to 8-1/4 inches (90.0 to 209.0 mm), Length: 18 to 46-13/16 inches (457.3 to 1189.0 mm) Allowable range of large size 2:

Width: 11-11/16 to 12-5/8 inches (297.1 to 320.0 mm), Length: 18 to 46-13/16 inches (457.3 to 1189.0 mm)

Allowable range of large size 3:

Width: 12-5/8 to 33.11 inches (320.1 to 841.0 mm), Length: 5-1/2 to 13/16 inches (139.7 to 1189.0 mm) The paper sizes registered in the range of the above custom sizes or banner sizes are available in both of [Original Size] and [Paper Size] of the printer driver. However, the paper size registered in the allowable range of each large size is available only in [Original Size] of the printer driver. If you set the function layout on the [My Tab] using the Driver Packaging Utility, each user can use those functions in the same layout.

When creating a driver package with **Driver Packaging Utility**, move the printer driver that is used as a source of the package to the desired position in My Tab. In [My Tab Settings...], select the [Display My Tab] and [Share My Tab] check boxes, then configure **Driver Packaging Utility** to copy the printer settings. For details on the **Driver Packaging Utility** settings, refer to the **Driver Packaging Utility** Help.

Reference

For details on how to edit [My Tab], refer to page 2-18.

2.6.4 [Printing Preferences] window of the printer driver

How to display the [Printing Preferences] window

The printer driver has two windows for configuring settings: the [Properties] window and the [Printing Preferences] window. This section describes the [Printing Preferences] window.

The [Printing Preferences] window has multiple tabs on each of which related functions are grouped to enable you to configure print functions unique to this machine. To display the [Printing Preferences] window, take the following steps:

- **1** Display the printer window.
 - → If the Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 Revision 2 is running, select [Devices and Printers] from the Start menu.

If [Devices and Printers] is not displayed, select [Control Panel] - [Hardware and Sound], and click [View devices and printers].

→ In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Control Panel] - [Hardware and Sound] - [Printer] from the Start menu.

When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].

- → In Windows XP/Server 2003, open the Start menu, then click [Printers and Faxes]. If [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed, click [Control Panel] - [Printers and Other Hardware] - [Printers and Faxes]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 2 Open [Printing Preferences...].
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and from [Printing Preferences...], click the displayed printer name.
 - → In Windows XP/Vista/Server 2003/Server 2008, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Printing Preferences...].

The [Printing Preferences] window of the printer appears.

Tips

• The print settings changed here are registered as default values. When you want to temporarily change settings to print from application software, click [Properties] (or [Preferences]) in the [Print] window to open the [Printing Preferences] window.

This section describes the settings and buttons common to tabs.

🧟 My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other		
8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11	(215.9)	c279.4 m	un)		Samp / Composition Favorte Setting Original Oteratatio Image: Composition Image: Composition Original Size 8 1/2x11 Paper Size Same as Original Size Same as Original Size Manual Paper Tray Auto	n it icape Size	v	Outp Au Copie	ut Method Print User Settings thentication/Account Track
	r View	28 	rinter Info	ormation	Paper Type Plain Paper		•	P	aper Settings for Each Tray Default

Settings	Description					
[Favorite Setting]	You can register the current print settings as a favorite and recall it when executing printing. For details on the [Favorite Setting], refer to page 2-17.					
View	Selecting [Paper View] displays a sample page layout based on the current settings for checking the output result image. Selecting [Printer View] displays a printer figure showing the options, such as paper trays, installed in the machine. Paper View: <u>1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)</u>					
	8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)					
	Printer View:					
[Printer Information]	Click this button to start Web Connection and check the printer informa- tion. This button is enabled only when your computer can communicate with this machine.					
[OK]	Applies the changes made to the settings and closes the setting window.					
[Cancel]	Discards (or cancels) the current changes and closes the setup window.					
[Help]	Displays the help for each item in the window.					
[Default]	Reverts the settings to their default values.					

2.6.5 Available operations in [My Tab]

[My Tab] allows you to customize the display contents.

You can gather setting items from difference tabs and place them in [My Tab]. Registering frequently used setting items in [My Tab] allows you to change settings in one tab, without switching among multiple tabs.

For details on how to edit [My Tab], refer to page 2-18.



Settings	Description
[More Details]	Click this button to display the Help of [My Tab].
[Do not show again]	Select this check box if you do not want to display the comment field con- taining [More Details].
[Edit My Tab]	Click this button to register or delete the functions displayed in [My Tab].

Tips

- The comment field containing [More Details] or [Do not show again] is not displayed if [Display Note] is disabled in [My Tab Settings] in the [Settings] tab of the [Properties] window.
- [Edit My Tab...] is not displayed when the [Settings] tab [My Tab Settings] [Prohibit Editing] is enabled in the [Properties] window.

Reference

For details in the [Settings] tab, refer to page 2-96.



In the [Basic] tab, you can configure basic settings about paper or printing. Functions that are frequently used in normal printing are placed in this tab.



Settings	Description				
[Original Orientation]	Specify the orientation of the original created in application software.If the setting in the printer driver differs from the one specified in the application software, correct the setting.Select the size of the original created in application software.If the setting in the printer driver differs from the one specified in the application software, correct the setting.To print on custom sized paper, select [Custom Size] and specify the width and length. For details, refer to page 2-22.				
[Original Size]					
[Paper Size]	Select the size of paper for printing. If this setting differs from the original size and [Zoom] is set to [Auto], the original is enlarged or reduced to the selected paper size. To print on custom sized paper, select [Custom Size] and specify the width and length. For details, refer to page 2-22.				
[Zoom]	 Select how the print image is enlarged or reduced. [Auto]: The image is enlarged or reduced to the size specified in [Paper Size]. [Manual]: The image is enlarged or reduced by the specified ratio (25 to 400%). 				
[Paper Tray]	Select the paper tray for the printing paper. When you select [Auto], the tray containing the paper selected in [Paper Size] is automatically used.				
[Paper Type]	When you have selected [Auto] in [Paper Tray], select the type of paper for printing. When you have selected anything other than [Auto], the paper type selected in [Paper Settings for Each Tray] is used.				
[Output Method]	Select the method to use to print the original from this machine.				

Settings	Description			
[Print]	Select this option to print normally.			
[Secure Print]	Select this option to print highly confidential documents. Printing is allowed when the ID and password are entered on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-75.			
[Save in User Box]	Select this option to save the original in a box on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-77.			
[Save in User Box/Print]	Select this option to save the original in a box on this machine and print it at the same time. For details, refer to page 2-77.			
[Proof Print]	Select this option to print a large number of copies. This machine prints only one copy and waits for the user's command before printing the re- maining copies. For details, refer to page 2-73.			
[ID&Print]	Select this option to print highly confidential documents in an environment where user authentication is employed. Printing is allowed when the user is authenticated to use this machine. For details, refer to page 2-82.			
[User Settings]	When you have selected [Secure Print] or [Save in User Box] ([Save ir Box/Print]) in [Output Method], enter the required information.			
[Authentication/Account Track]	When user authentication or account track is employed, enter the user name or account name and the password. For details, refer to page 2-79			
[Copies]	When printing multiple sets of copies, specify the number of sets.			
[Collate]	 When printing multiple sets of copies, select this check box to output sets of copies one by one. When this check box is cleared, the first page of the original is printed on as many sheets as the number specified in [Copies], and then each of the subsequent pages is printed in this manner. 			
[Offset]	When printing multiple sets of copies, select this check box to output each set as a staggered layer.			
[Paper Settings for Each Tray]	Specify the type of printing paper for each tray. When you specify anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray], the paper type information specified here is applied. Ensure that the settings correspond correctly to the paper that has been loaded into the paper trays of this machine. Use this setting when you can not change the settings in the [Configure] tab of the [Properties] window because you do not have the administrator privileges. Select the tray in [Paper Type Settings]. Then, in [Paper Type], specify the type of the paper to be loaded in the selected tray. Clicking [Reflect Device Status] reflects the settings.			

- [12 × 18] in [Paper Size] is equivalent to 304.8 × 457.2 mm that is slightly larger than A3.
- In [Original Size], you can select A0, A1, A2, B1, B2, or B3. However, the original is reduced to the size specified in [Paper Size]. In this case, you cannot select [Same as Original Size] in [Paper Size]. Likewise, the large size registered in Print Server Properties is also reduced to the size specified in [Paper Size]. The paper set in Print Server Properties is available when the [Display paper set in Print Server Properties] check box is selected in the [Settings] tab.
- When you want to print on the entire paper of the standard size, select "W" for each standard size in [Original Size]. The original is printed at the center of paper larger than the original. For example, if you want to center and print 8-1/2 × 11 size data on 11 × 17 sized paper, create data with the "8-1/2 × 11W" size, and then, using the printer driver, set [Original Size] to [8-1/2 × 11W] and specify the paper tray to be used as [Paper Tray]. On this machine, load 11 × 17 size paper into the tray to use, and check the paper size as follows. Select the tray in [Paper] for the copy mode. Select [Change Tray Settings] [Wide Paper], specify [8-1/2 × 11W] and make sure that the [Paper Size] is set to [Auto Detect] and 11 × 17 is displayed. If you have loaded the 12-1/4 × 18 papers, you must set the [Paper Size] to [12-1/4 × 18]. To print on custom sized paper, use the Bypass Tray. In [Change Tray Settings] [Wide Paper], select [8-1/2 × 11W], and enter the paper size to use in [Change Size].
- In [Paper Type], specify [Side2] when printing on the back side of paper.
- In [Paper Type], [User] specifies the paper type registered in this machine.

• If you have registered the custom papers in [Set Paper Name by User...] of [Configure] tab, you can select the registered custom papers from the [Paper Type] list.

2.6.7 Available operations in the [Layout] tab

In the [Layout] tab, you can configure layout settings for printing. You can combine pages or adjust print positions.

Printing P	eferenc									_ ×
🧟 My Tab	Basic	Layout	Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality	Other			
8 1/2x11	(215.9)	x279.4 n	ım)		Favorite Setting	😫 De	fault Set	ting 👻	Add Edit)
8 [°] 1/2x11	(215.9)	x279.4 n	im)		Combination			Print	Туре	
					2 in 1		Ŧ		2-Sided	•
			1		Combination	Details				
			1					Bindir	ng Position	
		_1)						Auto	•
				x1	Rotate 180			E Bi	nding Margin	
		Pa		RE	Skip Blank Page	S			Binding Margin Settings	
	1.94.2			97	Chapters			in In	age Shift	
		A			Entry Example 2	,4,6-10			Image Shift Settings	
	£	2								
Printe	r View	P	rinter Info	omation					Defaul	t
								ОК	Cancel	Help

Settings	Description
[Combination]	 Select how the original pages are combined on sheets. [2 in 1]/[4 in 1]/[6 in 1]/[9 in 1]/[16 in 1]: Multiple pages are reduced and printed on the same side of one sheet. For example, when you select [9 in 1], every set of nine pages is reduced and printed on the same side of one sheet. [2 × 2]/[3 × 3]/[4 × 4] (PCL only): The original image is enlarged, divided and printed on multiple sheets. For example, when you select [2 × 2], one page of the original is divided and printed on four sheets. When you join the printed sheets together, a large poster is created. As necessary, click [Combination Details] to configure detailed settings about page combination. [Combination]: Select the page combination. [Layout Order]: When you have selected N in 1 in [Combination], select the order of pages in the layout. [Border]: When you have selected N in 1 in [Combination], select this check box if you want to draw border lines between pages. In addition, select the type of border lines. [Overlap width line]: When you have selected N × N in [Combination], select this check box if you want to create overlap margins.
[Rotate 180]	Select this check box to rotate the original 180 degrees and print it.
[Skip Blank Pages]	Select this check box to exclude blank pages in the original from the pages to be printed.
[Chapters]	When you have selected [2-Sided] or [Booklet] in [Print Type], select this check box if you want to print particular pages on the front side. In [Entry Example], specify the page numbers of the pages you want to print on the front side. To specify multiple page numbers, separate each number with a comma (for example, "2,4,6") or connect the numbers using a hyphen (for example, "6-10").
[Print Type]	 Select the print sides of paper. [1-Sided]: The original is printed on one side of paper. [2-Sided]: The original is printed on both sides of paper. [Booklet]: The original is printed in booklet format. The pages in the original data are arranged, spread, and printed on both sides of sheets. When the printed sheets are stacked and folded in two, the pages are arranged in the correct order.
[Binding Position]	Select the binding positions for stapling or punching the sheets.

Settings	Description
[Binding Margin]	 Select this check box to provide a margin on printed sheets. Click [Binding Margin Settings] to specify the size of the margin in detail. [Shift Mode]: Select how the images are shifted for creating the margin. [Front Side]: Specify the size of the margin on the front side. [Back Side]: When you print on both sides, specify the size of the margin on the back side. When the [Same value for Front and Back sides] check box is selected, a margin of the same size is created on both front and back sides.
[Image Shift]	 Select this check box to fine tune (shift) the print position of the image with respect to the paper. Click [Image Shift Settings] to specify the print position in detail. [Front Side]: Specify the upward/downward and rightward/leftward shift distances for the front side. [Back Side]: When you print on both sides, specify the upward/downward and rightward/leftward shift distances for the back side. Selecting the [Same value for Front and Back sides] check box applies the same settings to both sides.

2.6.8 Available operations in the [Finish] tab

In the [Finish] tab, you can configure settings for the finish of printouts.

Printing Preferences			
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Co	ver Mode Stamp/Composition	Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting	🥵 Default Se	tting Add Edit
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Staple		Output Tray
1	Left Comer	v	Default -
	Center Staple	and Fold	
	Punch		
	2-Hole (Left)		Paper Arrangement
	Fold		Prioritize Arranging Papers 🔹
	×1	(By Copy Job) 👻	
	<u>F</u>		
	Page Fold Setting		
		110]	
Printer View Printer Informa			
Printer View Printer Informa	tion		Default
			OK Cancel Help

Settings	Description	
[Staple]	Select this check box to staple the printed sheets. In addition, specify the number and positions of staples.	
[Center Staple and Fold]	Select this check box to staple the printed sheets in two positions in the center. Use this option when you have set [Print Type] to [Booklet] in the [Layout] tab.	
[Punch]	Select this check box to make punch holes (binder holes) in the printed sheets. In addition, specify the number and positions of punch holes.	
[Fold]	Select this check box to fold the printed sheets. In addition, select the fold ing mode.	
[Page Fold Setting]	When you have selected [Half-Fold(By Sheet)] or [Tri-Fold(By Sheet)] in [Fold], specify the number of pages to be folded at one time.	
[Output Tray]	Select the tray to which the printed sheets are output.	
[Paper Arrangement]	 Select whether to adjust the binding position on two-sided printed sheets collectively after all data items are received or sequentially each time a data item is received. [Prioritize Arranging Papers]: Paper arrangement is performed once after all data items are received. All pages are adjusted under the same conditions. [Prioritize Productivity]: Paper arrangement is performed sequentially while printing the pages. 	

- To use [Staple], the optional **Finisher** is required.
- To use [Center Staple and Fold], the optional Finisher and Saddle Kit are required.
- To use [Punch], the optional **Finisher** and **Punch Kit** are required.
- The number of punched holes varies depending on the country you are in.
- To use Half-Fold or Tri-Fold of [Fold], the optional **Finisher** and **Saddle Kit** are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold], the optional **Finisher** and **Z-Fold Unit** are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold], specify the paper size described at the setting you selected from the drop-down list ([Z-Fold (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8K)], [Z-Fold (8 1/2 × 14)] at "Paper Size" of the application software or printer driver.

2.6.9 Available operations in the [Cover Mode] tab

In the [Cover Mode] tab, you can insert covers and pages. You can also change the layout or finish between pages.

Printing Preferences	×
My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mod	de Stamp/Composition Quality Other
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Vefault Setting Vefault Setting Add
8 [°] 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Front Cover
	Blank
	Front Cover Tray
	Tray1 💌
	Back Cover Transparency Interleave
	🕞 Blank 👻 🛃 Blank 👻
x1	Back Cover Tray Interleave Tray
	Tray1 v
	Front Cover from Post Inserter
	PI Tray 1 Carbon Copy Back Cover from Post Inserter Carbon Copy Settings
	PI Tray 1
Printer View Printer Information	
	Default
	OK Cancel Help

Settings	Description
[Front Cover]	 Select this check box to insert and print on a front cover. In [Front Cover Tray], select the paper tray for the front cover. Then, select whether to print on the inserted front cover. [Blank]: Nothing is printed on the inserted front cover. [Print]: The first page of the original is printed on the inserted front cover. You can set this option when you have selected anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray] in the [Basic] tab.
[Back Cover]	 Select this check box to insert and print on a back cover. In [Back Cover Tray], select the paper tray for the back cover. Then, select whether to print on the inserted back cover. [Blank]: Nothing is printed on the inserted back cover. [Print]: The last page of the original is printed on the inserted back cover. You can set this option when you have selected anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray] in the [Basic] tab.
[Front Cover from Post In- serter]	Select this check box to insert and print on an outer front cover. In addition, select the PI tray for the outer front cover. You can set this option when you have selected anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray] in the [Basic] tab.
[Back Cover from Post In- serter]	Select this check box to insert and print on an outer back cover. In addi- tion, select the PI tray for the outer back cover. You can set this option when you have selected anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray] in the [Basic] tab.
[Per Page Setting]	Select this check box to insert sheets into the original or change the print settings page by page. In addition, select the list to apply to printing. Click [Edit List] to create in advance a list containing detailed print settings. For details, refer to page 2-58.

Settings	Description
[Transparency Interleave]	When printing on multiple OHP transparencies, select this check box if you want to insert paper between the OHP transparencies. In [Interleave Tray], select the paper tray for the paper to be inserted. You can set this option when you have selected [Transparency] in [Paper Type] in the [Basic] tab.
[Carbon Copy]	Select this check box to print the original on different sheets of paper load- ed in multiple trays. Selecting the [Carbon Copy] check box displays the [Carbon Copy Set- tings] window. Specify the output order or trays used for carbon copying. For details, refer to page 2-26.

- To use [Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter], the optional **Post Inserter** is required.
- [Front Cover] and [Front Cover from Post Inserter], or [Back Cover] and [Back Cover from Post Inserter] cannot be specified at the same time.

2.6.10 Available operations in the [Stamp/Composition] tab

In the [Stamp/Composition] tab, you can configure settings for adding text or an image to the original. You can add the date/time or page numbers to the original or compose a watermark or an overlay image.

🖶 Printing Preferences		×
🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition Quality Other	
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting 12 Default Setting	ng 👻 Add Edit
▼ 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Watemark	Copy Security
	CIRCULAR	Copy Protect
	K NO REPRODUCTION	Edit Date/Time
	LANK	Page Number
x1	Overlay	Edit
	None -	
		Header/Footer
		<machine setting1=""></machine>
	Edit	Edit
Printer View Printer Information	For the functions that are set to be e the printer, settings of those function	
		OK Cancel Help

Settings		Description		
[W	atermark]	Select this check box to print a watermark (text stamp) on the original. In addition, from the list, select the watermark you want to print. Clicking [Edit] allows you to register or edit a watermark. For details, refer to page 2-42.		
[O [,]	verlay]	An overlay image to be composed on the original is created. The created overlay image is composed onto the original.		
	[Create Host Image]	Data created in application software is saved in the computer as an overlay image to be composed on the original. For details, refer to page 2-45.		
	[Create Shared Folder Image]	Data created in application software is saved in the shared folder on the network as an overlay image to be composed on the original. For details, refer to page 2-46.		
	[Print Host Image]	The overlay image created with [Create Host Image] or [Create Shared Im- age] is printed on the original as a composite image. Clicking [Edit] allows you to add or delete an overlay image or change the method of composing overlay images. For details, refer to page 2-43.		
	[Print Device Image] (PCL only)	An overlay image registered in this machine is recalled and printed on the original as a composite image. Clicking [Edit] allows you to add or delete an overlay image or change the method of composing overlay images. For details, refer to page 2-43.		

Settings		Description
[Copy Security]		A pattern that deters unauthorized copying is composed on the original. Clicking [Edit] allows you to configure detailed settings such as the item to be printed or how it is printed. For details, refer to page 2-50.
	[Copy Protect]	Text such as "Copy" and "Private" are printed in the background pattern as concealed text on each printed sheet.
	[Stamp Repeat]	On every page of the printed document, a text such as "Copy" or "Private" is printed as an invisible text.
	[Copy Guard]	Copy Guard is a copy protection function that prints concealed security watermarks such as "Private" or a date in the background to prevent un- authorized copying, and embeds a copy restriction pattern on all printed sheets.
	[Password Copy]	Password Copy is a copy protection function that prints concealed secu- rity watermarks such as "Private" or a date in the background to prevent unauthorized copying, and embeds a password for the password copy function on all printed sheets. Enter the password to be embedded (using up to eight characters).
[Da	ate/Time]	Select this check box to add the print date/time to the original. Clicking [Edit] allows you to change the print position and format of the text. For details, refer to page 2-47.
[Page Number]		Select this check box to add page numbers to the original. Clicking [Edit] allows you to change the print position and the page from which the printing starts. For details, refer to page 2-47.
[Header/Footer]		Select this check box to add the date and time and arbitrary text to the top or bottom margin (header/footer) of the original. Select the information to be added to the header/footer from those registered in this machine. Clicking [Edit] allows you to change the text color or the range of pages on which the header/footer is printed. For details, refer to page 2-49.

- To use [Copy Guard], you need to install the optional **Security Kit** and enable the Copy Guard function of this machine. For details on how to enable the Copy Guard function, refer to page 7-15.
- To use [Password Copy], you need to install the optional **Security Kit** and enable the Password Copy function of this machine. For details on how to enable the Password Copy function, refer to page 7-15.

2.6.11 Available operations in the [Quality] tab

In the [Quality] tab, you can configure settings for the image quality of the original. You can specify colors, image processing, and font processing.

Items that can be specified vary depending on your printer driver.

PCL driver

2

My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mo	de Stamp/Composition	Quality Other	
	Favorite Setting	😫 Default Settin	ng 👻 Add Edit
	Select Color		Resolution
	Auto Color	-	600dpi 👻
	2 Color		Pattern
	Black+Red	*	Coarse -
	Print with Bla	ick	Image Compression
	Text/Figure	-	High Compression -
	Quality	Adjustment	Glossy Mode
	Color Settings		Toner Save
	Photo DTP		Edge Enhancement
n Beiri 🛛 🐔	Web		
	CAD		
1 2 2 E I			Font Settings
Printer View Printer Information			Default

PS driver

dvanced 🧟 My Tab Basic Layout Finish	Cover Mode	Stamp/Composition	Quality Ot	her
	Favorite Settin	g 🕵 Defa	ult Setting	▼ Add Edit
	Select Cold	vr	Re	solution
	Auto Colo	r	- 6	i00dpi 👻
				Auto Trapping
		Quality Adjustment		Black Over Print
				ext 👻
			Į.	Glossy Mode
	Color Settir	igs		Toner Save
	Docu			Edge Enhancement
	DTP)		
	Web CAD			
	0.12			
				Font Settings
Printer View Printer Information				Default

XPS driver

Printing Preferences Vy Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode Stamp/Composition Quality Other				
	Favorite Setting 🙀 Default Setting 👻 Add Edit			
	Select Color Full Color			
	Patem Coarse Coarse Co			
	Color Settings Torier Save			
Printer View Printer Information	Default			
	OK Cancel Help			

Settings	Description	
[Select Color]	 Select colors for printing. [Auto Color] (PCL/PS): Colors are automatically selected according to the original color. [Full Color] (PS/XPS): The original is printed in full color regardless of whether the original is in color or in black and white. [Gray Scale]: The original is printed in black and white regardless of whether the original is in color or in black and white. To prevent colored text, lines, or figures from being printed faint, select the [Print with Black] check box (PCL/XPS). [2 Color] (PCL only): The original is printed in the two specified colors. The gray areas and color areas of a color original are printed using combinations of the colors specified in [2 Color]. 	
[Quality Adjustment]	 The image quality is fine tuned according to the original. [Simple]: The image quality of the entire original is adjusted. Specify the type of the color profile used for printing. [Detail]: The image quality of the original is adjusted in detail for each element such as text, photos, figures, tables, and graphs. For each element, specify the type of the color profile used for printing and other profiles to be applied. When you are using the PS driver, you can manage the ICC profiles with [Quality Adjustment]. For details, refer to page 2-68. 	
[Color Settings]	 Select the optimum color setting mode for the original. [Document]: The color setting suitable for originals containing multiple elements, such as text, graphs, figures, and photos, is applied. [Photo]: The color setting that prioritizes the image quality is applied. [DTP]: The color setting suitable for originals containing both text and figures is applied. What you see on the display is exactly reproduced. [Web]: The color setting suitable for printing Web pages is applied. Low-resolution images are reproduced with enhanced smoothness. [CAD]: The color setting suitable for originals composed of thin lines is applied. Images are reproduced in high resolutions. 	
[Resolution] (PCL/PS)	Select the print resolution.	
[Pattern] (PCL/XPS)	Select the pattern density.	
[Image Compression] (PCL only)	 Select the compression mode for the image data contained in the original. [Best Quality]: The process prioritizes quality. Quality is improved, but printing takes a long time. [High Compression]: The process prioritizes speed. The printing time is shortened, but the printing quality is deteriorated. [High/Smaller Image Size]: The image data is compressed and reduced, and the process prioritizes speed. For some image data, its print time can be reduced than the [High Compression] mode. 	
[Auto Trapping] (PS only)	Select this check box to prevent misalignment or generation of white space. Select this option to superimpose neighboring colors to print so as to prevent white space being generated around a picture.	
[Black Over Print] (PS only)	 Select this check box to prevent generation of white space around black characters or figures. Select this check box to superimpose black color on a neighboring color to print so as to prevent white space being generated around black characters or figures. [Text]: Only black characters are overprinted. [Text/Figure]: Figures and black characters are overprinted. 	
[Glossy Mode]	Select this check box to print images with a glossy finish. The printing speed is reduced.	
[Toner Save]	Select this check box to save the amount of toner consumed. The printing density is reduced.	
[Edge Enhancement]	Select this check box to sharply print small or faint text. Sharpen the edges of images such as text in the table and graphics to improve legibility.	
[Font Settings] (PCL/PS)	Specify how to process text. Select a type of fonts to be downloaded from the PC to this machine. Also specify whether to replace the TrueType fonts by printer fonts when print- ing. If characters are garbled in an environment using the PCL driver, we rec- ommend that you select [Bitmap] in [Download Font Format] and clear the [Use Printer Fonts] check box.	

2.6.12 Available operations in the [Other] tab

In the [Other] tab, you can check the driver version and configure print settings for application software.

Printing Preferences				
R My Tab Basic Layout Finish Cover Mode Stamp/Composition Quality Other				
8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Favorite Setting Verfault Setting Verfault Setting Verfault Setting			
▼ 8 1/2x11 (215.9x279.4 mm)	Excel Job Control			
п)	Excel Job Control			
	Remove White Background			
	Thin Line Support			
	Convert to Gray Scale			
d 45 A. 8 🐔	Threshold Value (difference between RGB values)			
	5 (120)			
🛛 🖬 🧟 🕵 🖪 🗌	About			
Printer View Printer Information				
Printer view Printer information	Default			
	OK Cancel Help			

Settings	Description
[Excel Job Control] (in 32- bit system environment on- ly)	Select this check box to print multiple Microsoft Excel sheets with different page settings at one time. When multiple sheets with different page settings are printed at one time, the sheets may be separated into single-sheet jobs depending on the data contained. This function avoids job separation as much as possible.
[Remove White Back- ground](for PCL/XPS in 32- bit system environment on- ly)	Select this check box to superimpose an overlay image on Microsoft Pow- erPoint data. White areas are removed so that the white background of the PowerPoint data does not hide the overlay image. Clear this check box to print the orig- inal as is without removing the background.
[Thin Line Support] (PCL only)	Select this check box to perform reduced-size printing. This function prevents thin lines from disappearing. This is effective for thin lines such as table borders created in Excel, but not for thin lines used in illustrations.
[Display the preview when printing] (XPS only)	A preview window is displayed when printing is executed.
[Convert to Gray Scale] (PCL only)	The RGB values of the original are checked, and if the difference between respective values is equal to or less than the specified threshold, the colors of the original are converted into gray scale. This option is valid when [Auto Color] is selected in [Select Color] in the [Quality] tab.
[About]	The version of the printer driver is displayed.

Tips

- [Excel Job Control] and [Remove White Background] are not available in Windows XP Professional ×64, Windows Vista ×64, Windows 7 ×64, Windows Server 2003 ×64, Windows Server 2008 ×64, or Windows Server 2008 R2.
- You can change the [Excel Job Control] setting only when the printer driver setting dialog box is displayed from the [Printers] ([Devices and Printers] in Windows 7/Server 2008 R2 and [Printers and Faxes] in Windows XP/Server 2003) window.



Deletion using the deletion program

If the printer driver was installed using the installer, the deletion function for the printer driver is also installed.

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- 1 From the Start menu, click [All Programs] (or [Programs]) [KONICA MINOLTA] [C754Series(PS_PCL_FAX)], or [C754Series(XPS)] [Uninstall Printer Driver].
- 2 Select the printer driver you want to delete, then click [Uninstall].
 - \rightarrow From then on, follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
- If the dialog box prompting to restart the computer, click [OK].This completes the deletion process of the printer driver.

Deletion using the installer

If you installed the printer driver using the installer, you can delete it using the installer.

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
 - \rightarrow Make sure that the installer starts, and then go to Step 2.
 - → If the installer does not start, open the printer driver folder on the DVD-ROM, double-click [Setup.exe], and then go to Step 3.
- 2 Click [Printer Install].

The printer driver installer starts.

- **3** Click [AGREE] in the license agreement window.
- 4 Select [Uninstall Printer Driver] and click [Next].
- 5 Select the printer driver you want to delete, then click [Uninstall].
 - \rightarrow From then on, follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
- 6 If a dialog box prompting you to restart the computer appears, click [OK] to restart the computer. This completes the deletion process of the printer driver.

bizhub C754/C654

2.8 Appendix: Manual installation process of the printer driver

2.8.1 Checking the connection method

1

In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2

The installation method for the printer driver differs depending on the method used to connect this machine to the computer. When this machine is connected to the network, there are several printing protocols. The installation method for the printer driver also differs depending on the protocol.

Installation meth- od	Connection method	
Connection meth- od in which setup is possible using Add Printer Wizard	LPR	 A network connection using the LPR (Line Printer Remote) print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the LPR printing port. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-113.
	Port 9100	 A network connection using the PORT9100 print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the RAW printing port. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-113.
	SMB	 A network connection using SMB (Server Message Block) for sharing files or printers in Windows. It supports the TCP/IP protocol. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-117.
	IPP/IPPS	 A network connection using the IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) print service. Printing via the Internet is possible with the HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) of the TCP/IP protocol. IPPS is an IPP for SSL encrypted communication. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-121.
	Web service print	 It is a connection corresponding to Web service function of Windows Vista and later operating systems and capable of automatically detecting the printer on the network. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-123.
	USB	A connection using a USB port.
Connection meth- od in which plug and play-based setup is possible	USB	 A connection using a USB port. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-125.

Tips

- In User's Guide manuals, location paths of folders or files may not contain the root directory.
- To install the Windows printer driver manually, specify the driver files in the EN (English) folder, and nothing anywhere else.

bizhub C754/C654

In Windows XP/Server 2003

The installation method for the printer driver differs depending on the method used to connect this machine to the computer. When this machine is connected to the network, there are several printing protocols. The installation method for the printer driver also differs depending on the protocol.

Setup procedures	Connection method	
Connection meth- od in which setup is possible using Add Printer Wizard	LPR	 A network connection using the LPR (Line Printer Remote) print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the LPR printing port. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-113.
	Port 9100	 A network connection using the PORT9100 print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the RAW printing port. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-113.
	SMB	 A network connection using SMB (Server Message Block) for sharing files or printers in Windows. It supports the TCP/IP protocol. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-117.
	IPP/IPPS	 A network connection using the IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) print service. Printing via the Internet is possible with the HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) of the TCP/IP protocol. IPPS is an IPP for SSL encrypted communication. For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-121.
	USB	A connection using a USB port.
Connection meth- od in which plug and play-based setup is possible	USB	A connection using a USB port.For the installation procedure, refer to page 2-125.

Tips

- In User's Guide manuals, location paths of folders or files may not contain the root directory.
- To install the Windows printer driver manually, specify the driver files in the EN (English) folder, and nothing anywhere else.

2.8.2 Installation using an LPR/Port 9100 connection

Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

Configure the LPR/Port 9100 operating environment.

- When using port 9100: Make sure that the RAW port number has been set. (In normal circumstances, you can use the default settings.) How to configure the setting is explained using Web Connection. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].
- When using the LPR:

Check that LPD is enabled. (Normally, you can use this machine with the default setting.) How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2

You can install the printer driver by automatically detecting the printer on the network or by creating a new port.

The procedure for installing the printer driver by automatically detecting the printer on the network is as follows:

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- ✓ Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect this machine to the network before turning it on.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 From the Start menu, click [Control Panel].
- 3 Select the printer functions from [Hardware and Sound].
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Printer] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 4 Select Add a printer.
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Add a printer].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Add a printer].

The [Add printer] Wizard appears.

5 Click [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer].

Connected printers are detected.

- 6 Select your machine from the list, then click [Next].
 - → If no printers are detected, restart this machine.
 - → Use the IP address to confirm the printer that you want to connect to.
 - → It may take some time to finish searching the entire list of printers.
- 7 Click [Have Disk...].
- 8 Click [Browse...].
- 9 Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [Open].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver
- **10** Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

- 11 Click [Next].
- **12** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
 - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- 13 Click [Finish].
- 14 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.
- **15** Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

The procedure for installing the printer driver by creating a new port is as follows:

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- ✓ Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect this machine to the network before turning it on.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 From the Start menu, click [Control Panel].
- 3 Select the printer functions from [Hardware and Sound].
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Printer] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 4 Select Add a printer.
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Add a printer].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Add a printer]. [Add printer] appears.
- 5 Click [Add a local printer].

The [Choose a printer port] dialog box appears.

- 6 Click [Create a new port:], then select [Standard TCP/IP Port].
- 7 Click [Next].
- 8 Select [TCP/IP Device], then enter the IP address.
- 9 Click [Next].
 - → If the [Additional Port Information Required] dialog box appears, go to Step 10.
 - → If the [Install the printer driver] dialog box appears, go to Step 13.
- 10 Select [Custom], and then click [Settings...].
- 11 Change the settings according to the port, and then click [OK].
 - → For an LPR connection, select the [LPR] check box, then enter "Print" in [Queue Name:]. You must discriminate between upper and lower case letters when entering it.
 - → For Port 9100 connection, select the [Raw] check box, and then enter a RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]) in [Port Number:].
 - → If both LPR and Port 9100 are enabled on this machine, the printer driver is connected to this machine using LPR.
- 12 Click [Next].

The [Install the printer driver] dialog box appears.

- 13 Click [Have Disk...].
- 14 Click [Browse...].
- **15** Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [Open].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver
- 16 Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

17 Click [Next].

- **18** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
 - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- **19** Click [Finish].

2

- 20 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.
- 21 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

In Windows XP/Server 2003

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 From the Start menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
 - → If [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed, select [Control Panel] [Printers and Other Hardware] -[Printers and Faxes] from the Start menu.
- 3 Select Printer Install.
 - → In Windows XP, select [Add a printer] from [Printer Tasks].
 - → In Windows Server 2003, double-click [Add Printer].
 - [Add Printer Wizard] appears.
- 4 Click [Next >].
- 5 Select [Local printer attached to this computer], then click [Next >].

→ Clear the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] check box. The [Select a Printer Port] page appears.

- 6 Click [Create a new port:], then select [Standard TCP/IP Port] as the [Type of port:].
- 7 Click [Next >].

[Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] starts.

- 8 Click [Next >].
- 9 In the [Printer Name or IP Address:] box, enter the IP address for the machine, and then click [Next >].
 - → If the [Additional Port Information Required] dialog box appears, go to Step 10.
 - → If the [Finish] screen appears, go to Step 13.
- 10 Select the [Custom] check box, then click [Settings:].
- 11 Change the settings according to the port, and then click [OK].
 - → For an LPR connection, select the [LPR] check box, then enter "Print" in [Queue Name:]. You must discriminate between upper and lower case letters when entering it.
 - → For Port 9100 connection, select the [Raw] check box, and then enter a RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]) in [Port Number:].
- 12 Click [Next >].
- **13** Click [Finish].

[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 14 Click [Have Disk...].
- 15 Click [Browse...].

- 16 Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [Open].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver and PS driver
- **17** Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

- **18** Click [Next >].
- **19** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
 - → To use a network connection, perform a test print after the network settings have been configured.
- **20** Click [Finish].
- 21 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 22 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive. This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

2.8.3 Installation using a SMB connection

Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

Configure the SMB operating environment.

How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2

You can install the printer driver by automatically detecting the printer on the network or by creating a new port.

The procedure for installing the printer driver by automatically detecting the printer on the network is as follows:

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- ✓ Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect this machine to the network before turning it on.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 From the Start menu, click [Control Panel].
- 3 Select the printer functions from [Hardware and Sound].
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Printer] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 4 Select Add a printer.
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Add a printer].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Add a printer]. The [ADD a printer] Wizard appears.
- 5 Click [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer]. Connected printers are detected.

bizhub C754/C654

- 6 Select your machine from the list, then click [Next].
 - → If no printers are detected, restart this machine.
 - → Select a printer from "\NetBIOS-name\print-service-name". To check the NetBIOS name and print service name, select [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [Network Settings] - [SMB Settings] - [Print Settings] on this machine.
 - → It may take some time to finish searching the entire list of printers.
- 7 Click [OK].

2

- 8 Click [Have Disk...].
- 9 Click [Browse...].
- 10 Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [Open].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver
- 11 Click [OK]. The [Printers] list appears.
- **12** Click [OK].
- **13** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
 - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- **14** Click [Finish].
- **15** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.
- 16 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

The procedure for installing the printer driver by creating a new port is as follows:

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- ✓ Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect this machine to the network before turning it on.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 From the Start menu, click [Control Panel].
- **3** Select the printer functions from [Hardware and Sound].
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Printer] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 4 Select Add a printer.
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Add a printer].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Add a printer].
 - [Add printer] appears.
- 5 Click [Add a local printer].

The [Choose a printer port] dialog box appears.

- 6 Click [Create a new port:], then select [Local Port].
- 7 Click [Next].

- 8 Specify the IP address and port.
 - → Enter "\\NetBIOS-name\print-service-name" in the [Port Name] box.
 - → For the NetBIOS name and print service name, enter the names displayed by selecting [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Network Settings] [SMB Settings] [Print Settings] on this machine.
- 9 Click [Next].
 - → If the [Additional Port Information Required] dialog box appears, go to Step 10.
 - \rightarrow If the [Install the printer driver] dialog box appears, go to Step 13.
- **10** Select the [Custom] check box, then click [Settings...].
- 11 Change the settings according to the port, and then click [OK].
- 12 Click [Next].

The [Install the printer driver] dialog box appears.

- 13 Click [Have Disk...].
- 14 Click [Browse...].
- **15** Select a desired printer driver folder in the DVD-ROM, and then click [Open].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver
- **16** Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

- 17 Click [Next].
- **18** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
 - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- 19 Click [Finish].
- 20 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.
- 21 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

In Windows XP/Windows 2003

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 From the Start menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
 - → If [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed, select [Control Panel] [Printers and Other Hardware] [Printers and Faxes] from the Start menu.
- 3 Select Printer Install.
 - → In Windows XP, select [Add a printer] from [Printer Tasks].
 → In Windows Server 2003, double-click [Add Printer].
 - [Add Printer Wizard] appears.
- 4 Click [Next >].
- 5 Select [Local printer attached to this computer], then click [Next >].
 - → Clear the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] check box. The dialog box for [Select a Printer Port] appears.

- 6 Click [Create a new port:], select [Local Port] as the [Type of port:], then click [Next >].
- 7 Enter "\\NetBIOS-name\print-service-name" in the [Port Name] box.
 - → For the NetBIOS name and print service name, enter the names displayed by selecting [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Network Settings] [SMB Settings] [Print Settings] on this machine.
- 8 Click [OK].

2

[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 9 Click [Have Disk...].
- 10 Click [Browse...].
- **11** Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [Open].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver and PS driver
- 12 Click [OK]. The [Printers] list appears.

- 13 Click [Next >].
- **14** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
 - → To use a network connection, perform a test print after the network settings have been configured.
- **15** Click [Finish].
- 16 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 17 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the installation process of the printer driver.



Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

Configure the IPP/IPPS operating environment.

How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2

- Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 From the Start menu, click [Control Panel].
- 3 Select the printer functions from [Hardware and Sound].
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Hardware and Sound] under [Printer]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].

The [Printers] window appears.

- 4 Select Add a printer.
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Add a printer].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Add a printer]. The [Add printer] Wizard appears.
- 5 Click [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer].

Connected printers are detected.

- 6 In the window showing the search result, click [The printer that I want isn't listed].
- 7 In [Select a shared printer by name], enter the URL for the machine in the following format, then click [Next].
 - → http://<IP address of this machine>/ipp Example: http://192.168.1.20/ipp
 - → When specifying to use IPPS printing, enter "https://[host name].[domain name]/ipp". For [host name]. [domain name], specify the host name and domain name registered for the DNS server being used.
 - → If the certificate for the machine is not the one issued by the certifying authority, you must register the certificate for the machine on the Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2 system as the certificate by "Trusted Root Certification Authorities" for the computer account.
 - → When registering the certificate in the machine, check that the certificate shows [host name]. [domain name] as the common name.
- 8 Click [Have Disk...].
- 9 Click [Browse...].
- 10 Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [Open].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver
- **11** Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

12 Click [OK].

- **13** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
 - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- 14 Click [Finish].

2

- **15** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.
- 16 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the installation process of the printer driver. Once the settings for the printer have been configured, you can use the printer in the same way as a general local printer.

In Windows XP/Server 2003

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 From the Start menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
 - → If [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed, select [Control Panel] [Printers and Other Hardware] [Printers and Faxes] from the Start menu.
- 3 Select Printer Install.
 - → In Windows XP, select [Add a printer] from [Printer Tasks].
 - → In Windows Server 2003, double-click [Add Printer]. [Add Printer Wizard] appears.
- 4 Click [Next >].
- 5 In the [Local or Network Printer] page, select [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer], then click [Next >].
- 6 In the [Specify a Printer] page, select [Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:].
- 7 In [URL:], enter the URL for the machine in the following format, then click [Next >].
 - → http://<IP address of this machine>/ipp Example: http://192.168.1.20/ipp
 - → When specifying to use IPPS printing, enter "https://[IP address for the machine]/ipp".
 - → If a confirmation dialog box appears after clicking [Next >], click [OK].
- 8 Click [Have Disk...].
- 9 Click [Browse...].
- 10 Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [Open].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver and PS driver
- 11 Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

- 12 Click [OK].
- **13** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
- 14 Click [Finish].
- 15 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.

16 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the installation process of the printer driver. Once the settings for the printer have been configured, you can use the printer in the same way as a general local printer.

2.8.5 Installation using a Web service connection

Web service

The Web service function automatically detects devices on the network and installs the necessary printer drivers.

In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, printers supporting the Web service print function are located on the network and the printer drivers are installed.

Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

Configure the Web service operating environment.

How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

Installation methods

You can install the printer driver by automatically detecting the printer on the network or by specifying the IP address.

The procedure for installing the printer driver by automatically detecting the printer on the network is as follows:

- In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, first install the printer driver and then associate it with this machine through plug and play.
- ✓ In Windows Vista/Server 2008, you can install the printer driver by creating a new port, even if the printer driver is not installed in advance.
- Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- To install a different printer driver in the computer where one has already been installed, you must uninstall the whole package of the currently installed printer driver.
- 1 Install the printer driver for this machine.
 - → For details, refer to page 2-7. The printer driver can be installed in any port.
- 2 Turn on the power of the machine while it is connected to the network.
- 3 In [Network and Sharing Center] on the computer, check that [Network Discovery] is enabled.
- 4 Open the [Network] window.
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, open [Computer] and click [Network]. If [Network] is not displayed, click the [Network and Internet] category on [Control Panel], then click [View network computers and devices].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, open the Start menu, and click [Network].

Connected computers and devices are detected.

- 5 Select the device name of the machine, then click [Install] on the toolbar.
 - → To check the device name, select [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Network Settings] [DPWS Settings] [DPWS Common Settings] on this machine.

The printer driver for this machine is detected and the machine is ready to print.

6 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.

Reference

If the printer driver is not correctly installed, the driver must be updated using [Update Driver...]. For details, refer to page 2-126.

bizhub C754/C654

The procedure for installing the printer driver by specifying the IP address is as follows:

In Windows Vista/Server 2008, you can add a Web service device using the addition function of the printer after connecting this machine.

- ✓ In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, the following installation procedure cannot be used. Use the installation procedure described in the previous section.
- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- ✓ To install a different printer driver in the computer where one has already been installed, you must uninstall the whole package of the currently installed printer driver.
- 1 Turn on the power of the machine while it is connected to the network.
- 2 In [Network and Sharing Center] on the computer, check that [Network Discovery] is enabled.
- 3 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 4 From the Start menu, click [Control Panel].
- 5 Click [Printers] under [Hardware and Sound].

→ When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers]. The [Printers] window appears.

- Click [Add a printer].
 The [Add Printer] appears.
- Click [Add a local printer].The page for [Choose a printer port] appears.
- 8 Click [Create a new port:], then select [Standard TCP/IP Port].
- 9 Click [Next].
- Select [Web Services Device], enter the IP address, and click [Next].A printer of the entered IP address is located, then the [Found New Hardware] dialog box appears.
- 11 Click [Locate and install driver software (recommended)].
- 12 If a dialog box to confirm whether to search online appears, click [Don't search online].
- 13 Click [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)].
- 14 Click [Browse...].
- 15 Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [Open].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver
- 16 Click [Next].
- **17** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
 - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue].
- **18** Click [Close].
- **19** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] window.
- 20 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2

To connect this machine using the USB port in Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, first install the printer driver and then associate it with this machine through plus and play.

- ✓ In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, the installation disk cannot be specified after the connection has been established. Install the printer driver in advance.
- In Windows Vista/Server 2008, you can continue the task and specify the printer driver installation disk to install the printer driver if it is not installed in advance.
- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- 1 Install the printer driver for this machine.
 - → For details, refer to page 2-7.
- 2 Connect this machine to the computer using a USB cable.
- 3 Turn on the main power of this machine.

The printer driver for this machine is detected and the machine is ready to print. → If the printer driver is not detected, restart this machine.

4 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window.

Reference

If the printer driver is not correctly installed, the driver must be updated using [Update Driver...]. For details, refer to page 2-126.

In Windows XP/Server 2003

- ✓ Administrator privileges are required to perform this task.
- 1 Connect this machine to the computer using a USB cable, and then start the computer.
- 2 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 3 Turn on the main power of this machine.

The [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box appears.

- → If the [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box does not appear, restart this machine.
- → If a page with a message saying "Windows connect to Windows Update" appears, select ["No, not this time"].
- 4 Select [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].
- 5 Under [Search for the best driver in these locations.], select [Include this location in the search:], then click [Browse].
- 6 Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [OK].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver and PS driver
- 7 Click [Next >], then follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
- 8 Click [Finish].
- 9 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 10 Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive. This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

Updating the printer driver

In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, if this machine is connected without first installing the printer driver, the printer driver will not be correctly identified. If the printer driver is not correctly identified, the driver must be updated using [Update Driver...].

- 1 From the Start menu, click [Devices and Printers].
 - → If [Devices and Printers] is not displayed, select [Control Panel] [Hardware and Sound], and click [View devices and printers]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in an icon view, double-click [Devices and Printers].
- 2 Right-click the device name of the machine that is under [Unspecified] and then click [Properties].
 - → If [Unknown Device] appears instead of the device name of the machine, right-click to remove the device, and install the printer driver.
- 3 In the [Hardware] tab, click [Properties].
- 4 In the [General] tab, click [Change Settings].
- 5 In the [Driver] tab, click [Update Driver...].
- 6 In the page in which to select how to search the driver software, click [Browse my computer for driver software].
- 7 Click [Browse...].
- 8 Select the folder on the DVD-ROM containing the desired printer driver, then click [OK].
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver
- 9 Click [Next].
- 10 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
- 11 Click [Close].
- 12 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Devices and Printers] window.
- **13** Remove the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive. This completes the update of the printer driver.

Tips

In Windows Vista/Server 2008, [Update Driver ...] is also available. Under [Device Manager], open [Properties] for this machine that is listed in [Other Devices], and specify [Update Driver...].
 (To select [Device Manager], right-click [Computer], and then click [Properties]. Select it in the [Tasks] pane that appears.)

2.8.7 Manually deleting the printer driver

If the printer driver was installed without using the installer, manually delete the printer driver.

- **1** Display the printer window.
 - → If the Windows 7 or Windows Server 2008 Revision 2 is running, select [Devices and Printers] from the Start menu. If
 - [Devices and Printers] is not displayed, select [Control Panel] [Hardware and Sound], and click [View devices and printers].
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, click [Control Panel] [Hardware and Sound] [Printers] from the Start menu. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
 - → In Windows XP/Server 2003, open the Start menu, then click [Printers and Faxes]. If [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed, click [Control Panel] - [Printers and Other Hardware] - [Printers and Faxes]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 2 Click the icon of the printer driver to be deleted.
- 3 Remove the printer driver.
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, click [Remove device] on the toolbar.
 - → In Windows XP/Vista/Server 2003/Server 2008, press the [Delete] key on the computer keyboard.
- 4 From then on, follow the instructions on the pages that follow.

When the printer driver is deleted, the icon disappears from the window.

- 5 Open [Server Properties].
 - → In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, select a different printer, and click [Print Server Properties] on the toolbar.
 - → In Windows Vista/Server 2008, right-click on the area that has nothing displayed in the [Printers] window, click [Run as administrator] [Server Properties].
 - → In Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [File] menu, then [Server Properties].
 - → If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- 6 Click the [Driver] tab.
- 7 From the [Installed printer drivers:] list, select the printer driver to be removed, then click [Remove...].
 - → In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, go to Step 8.
 - → In Windows XP/Server 2003, go to Step 9.
- 8 Select [Remove driver and driver package.] in the dialog box for confirming deletion target, then click [OK].
- 9 In the dialog box for confirming if you are sure to remove the printer, click [Yes].
 - → In Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, the dialog box appears to reconfirm if you are sure. Click [Uninstall].
- 10 Close the open windows, and then restart the computer.

→ Be sure to restart the computer.

This completes the deletion process of the printer driver.

Tips

- In Windows XP/Server 2003, if the printer driver is deleted in the above procedure, the model information files remain in the computer. For this reason, when reinstalling the same version of the printer driver, the driver may not be rewritten. In this case, remove the following files as well.
- Check the "C:\WINDOWS\system32\spool\drivers\w32×86" folder ("C:\WIN-DOWS\system32\spool\drivers\x64" folder in the x64 system), and if there is a folder of the corresponding model, remove it. However, if multiple drivers are installed including the PCL KONICA MINOLTA driver, PostScript KONICA MINOLTA driver and fax driver, the model information of all drivers is deleted. To leave drivers other than the fax driver, do not remove the folder.

- From the "C:\WINDOWS\inf" folder, remove "oem*.inf" and "oem*.PNF" ("*" included in the file name indicates a number, which differs depending on the computer environment).
 Before removing these files, open the inf file, and then check the model name described on the last few lines to confirm it is the file for the corresponding model. The number of the PNF file is the same as that of the inf file.
- When you have deleted a file using [Remove driver and driver package.] in Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, this operation is not required.


3 Printing in a Mac OS Environment

3.1 Preparation for Printing (Bonjour Connection)

3.1.1 Overview

Before using this machine as a printer, you need to install the printer driver on your computer and add the printer to your computer.

This section describes preparatory steps for printing from this machine via Bonjour (Rendezvous) connection supported in Mac OS X 10.2 or later.



Tips

- The Bonjour technology enables you to configure the network settings for networked devices and find and use services without the need for configuring special settings.
- In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3, Bonjour is called Rendezvous.

3.1.2 Before Setting Up the Computer (For Administrators)

Preparation flow

In order to use this machine via a Bonjour connection, you need to take preparatory steps on this machine.

- 1 Connecting this machine to the network
 - → Checking the LAN cable connection
- 2 Configuring the Bonjour settings
 - → Enabling Bonjour
 - → Setting a printer name (Bonjour name)

Enter the name of this machine to be displayed as the name of a connected device.

3 Preparation finished

Checking the LAN cable connection

Check that a LAN cable is connected to the LAN port of this machine.



Configuring the Bonjour settings

Enable Bonjour. In addition, enter the name of this machine (Bonjour name) to be displayed as the name of a connected device.

How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

3.1.3 Setting up the computer

Setup flow

This section describes the setup flow for printing from your computer.

- **1** Preparing the printer driver
 - → Preparing the DVD-ROM
 - → Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver

Check that your computer meets the operating environment requirements of the printer driver.

- 2 Installing the printer driver to the computer
 - → Installing the printer driver using the installer
 - Insert the DVD-ROM disk into the drive, and install the software by following the on-screen instructions. → Adding the printer

Add the printer automatically detected by Bonjour to the computer.

3 Preparation finished

Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver

The following lists the printer drivers included on the DVD-ROM supplied with this machine and the supported operating systems.

Printer driver	Page descrip- tion language	Supported Operating Systems
PostScript PPD driver	PostScript 3 Em-	Mac OS 9.2 or later
(PS-PPD)	ulation	Mac OS X 10.2.8/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6

Installing the printer driver

Install the printer driver using the installer.

- ✔ Before installation, exit all application software programs that are running.
- 1 Mount the DVD-ROM disk into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Open the folder on the DVD-ROM that contains the desired printer driver.
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.
- **3** Copy the driver file onto the desktop according to the Mac OS X version.
 - → Mac OS X 10.2: bizhub_C754_102.pkg
 - → Mac OS X 10.3: bizhub_C754_103104.pkg
 - → Mac OS X 10.4: bizhub_C754_103104.pkg
 - → Mac OS X 10.5: bizhub_C754_105.pkg
 - → Mac OS X 10.6: bizhub_C754_106.pkg
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, the driver folder varies depending on the paper size. Select the file according to your environment. To use metric-based paper size (A4 and the like): "A4" folder
 - To use inch-based paper size (8 1/2 × 11 in letter size): "Letter" folder
- 4 Double-click the file copied onto the desktop.

The printer driver installer starts.

- 5 Click [Continue] following the instructions on the pages that follow until the [Install] page appears.
 - → When the name and password prompt appears during the procedure, enter the administrator name and password.
- 6 Click [Install].

The printer driver is installed in the computer.

7 Click [Close].

This completes the installation process of the printer driver. Then, add the printer to the computer.

Configuring connection using Bonjour (Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6)

Add the printer automatically detected by Bonjour to the computer.

- **1** Select [System Preferences] in the Apple menu.
- 2 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.
- 3 Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.
- 4 Click [Default].

Connected printers are detected.

- → If no printers are detected, restart this machine.
- 5 From the [Printer Name] list, select the desired printer for a Bonjour connection.
 - → To check the printer name, select [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Network Settings] [Bonjour Setting] on this machine.
 - The printer driver for the selected printer is displayed in [Print Using:].
 - \rightarrow When the printer driver is displayed, go to Step 7.
 - → When the printer driver is not correctly displayed, go to Step 6.

- 6 Manually select the printer driver.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.6, select [Select Printer Software...] from [Print Using:], then click the driver of the desired printer from the list that is displayed in another window.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5, select [Select a driver to use...] in [Print Using:], then click the driver of the desired printer from the list.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.4, select [KONICA MINOLTA] in [Print Using:], and then click the driver of the desired printer from the list.
- 7 Click [Add].

3

This completes the addition process of the printer. Then, proceed to the [Installable Options] window to configure the optional environment for this machine. For details, refer to page 3-7.

Configuring connection using Rendezvous (Mac OS X 10.2/10.3)

Add the printer automatically detected by Rendezvous to the PC.

- **1** From [Macintosh HD] [Applications] [Utilities], double-click [Printer Setup Utility] or [Print Center] to open it.
- 2 When the [You have no printers available.] window appears, click [Add]. When the [Printer List] appears, click [Add].
 - → If available printers have already been specified, the [You have no printers available.] window does not appear.
- **3** Select [Rendezvous] as the connection method.

Connected printers are detected.

- → If no printers are detected, restart this machine.
- 4 From the [Name] list, select the desired printer for Rendezvous connection.
 - → To check the printer name, select [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Network Settings] [Bonjour Setting] on this machine.
- 5 Manually select the printer driver.
 - → In [Printer Model:], select [KONICA MINOLTA], then click the driver of the desired printer from the model list.
- 6 Click [Add].

This completes the addition process of the printer. Then, proceed to the [Installable Options] window to configure the optional environment for this machine. For details, refer to page 3-7.

3.1.4 Configuring the default settings of the printer driver

Configuring the optional environment of this machine

When you use this machine for the first time, properly configure the printer driver so that it contains information such as the options installed in this machine.

- 1 Open the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center]) window.
 - → The [Print & Fax] window can be opened from [System Preferences...] in Apple menu (Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6).
 - → The [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center] window can be opened from [Macintosh HD] [Applications] - [Utilities].
- 2 Display the [Printer Information] window.
 - → For the [Print & Fax] window, click [Options & Supplies...] (Mac OS X 10.5/10.6) or [Printer Setup...] (Mac OS X 10.4).
 - → For the [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center] window, click [Show Info] of the [Printer] menu.
- 3 Display the [Installable Options] window.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, click [Driver].
 - → In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4, select [Installable Options].
- 4 Change the settings according to the options installed in this machine.

Print Using: KON	CA MINOLTA C	754 PS			\$
To take full advantag here. For informatior documentation.				ey are accurately sho , check the printer's	vn
Paper Source Unit: (LU-204	•			
Finisher: FS-535 +	PI-505 + SD-	-512 🛟)		
Punch Unit: PK-52	1 (2/3-Hole)		•		
🗹 Hard Disk					
Secure Print Only					
Allow Public User					

5 Click [OK] or [Apply Changes] to close the [Printer Information] window.

Changing the default print settings

In the [Page Setup] window of the printer driver, you can change the default settings for paper and zoom ratio.

- 1 Display the [Page Setup] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Page Setup] window, refer to page 3-68.
- 2 Change the settings, and select [Save As Default] from [Settings:].

Settings 🗸 Page Attributes
Save As Default
Paper Size: A4
20.99 by 29.70 cm
Orientation:
Scale: 100 %
(?) (Cancel) OK

3.2 Printing procedure

3

3.2.1 Printing operation flow

- 1 Open document data using the application software. From the [File] menu, select [Print].
- 2 Check that the desired printer is selected in [Printer:].
 - → The [Print] dialog box varies depending on the application software.

Printer:	Printer Name	•	
Presets:	Standard	÷	
? PDF v	Preview	Cancel Print	

- 3 Specify the print range and the number of copies to print.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, if the setting items (1) are not displayed, click on the right side of [Printer:].

 Printer: Printer Name
Copies: 1 Collated
Pages: • All
Paper Size: 8 1/2x11 8.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:
TextEdit 2
Print header and footer
Cancel Print

- 4 If necessary, switch the menu of application names (2) and change the print settings.
 - → The print settings you have changed here are reset to the defaults when you exit the application software. It is useful to register frequently used print settings as presets. For details, refer to page 3-9.
- 5 Click [Print].

Printing is executed.

You can register the current print settings as a preset and recall it when executing printing.

When you register a frequently used combination of print settings as a preset, you can easily apply all of those settings just by selecting the combination from the presets, even if the combination is complicated as it contains settings on multiple menus.

- **1** Display the [Print] window of the printer driver.
 - → For information on how to display the [Print] window, refer to page 3-69.
- 2 Change the settings, and select [Save As] from [Presets:].

Maria Mari	Printer: Printer Name Presets / Standard Last Used Settings Copies Save Pages Save As Rename Delete Paper Size. TextEdit Print header and footer
? (PDF •)	(Cancel) (Print)

3 Enter the name of the print setting.

The saved setting can be recalled from [Presets:]. Use a name that helps you easily identify the preset.

3.3 Useful printing functions

3

3.3.1 Changing the paper size or type

Enlarging or reducing by the desired zoom ratio ([Scale:])

You can print the original image after it has been enlarged or reduced by the desired zoom ratio.



In [Scale:] in the [Page Attributes] tab, specify the zoom ratio.

Settings:	Page Attributes
Format for:	Printer Name
	PS
Paper Size:	8 1/2×11
	8.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:	
Scale:	100 %
(?)	Cancel OK

Printing on custom size paper ([Page Setup])

A special sized original is printed on custom sized paper loaded in the Bypass Tray.

In [Paper Size:] under [Page Attributes], select [Manage Custom Sizes...], and specify the desired width and length.

- 1 From the [File] menu, click [Page Setup] (or [Paper Setup]).
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, you can configure the same setting in [Paper Size:] in the [Print] window.
- 2 Open the window for registering a custom size.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6, select [Manage Custom Sizes...] from the Paper Size list.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3, select [Custom Paper Size] from [Settings:].
- 3 Click [+] (Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6) or [Add] (Mac OS X 10.2/10.3).
- 4 Enter the name of the paper size you are registering.
 - → Be sure to use paper size names other than existing names, such as A4 and Custom.
- 5 Specify the width and length as desired.
 - → If necessary, set the top, bottom, right, and left margins of the paper in [Printer Margins].

ong Paper	Page Size:	11.42 in Width	19.69 in Height
	Printer Margin	ns:	
	User defined	1	
		0.25 in	
	0.25 in	Тор	0.25 i
	Left	0.57 in	Right
		Bottom	
+ - Duplicate			

6 Click [OK] (Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6) or [Save] (Mac OS X 10.2/10.3).

This saves the custom paper size, which can be selected from the [Paper Size:] drop-down list in [Page Attributes].

Reference

To print on custom sized paper, use **Bypass Tray**. For details on how to add paper to the **Bypass Tray**, refer to [User's Guide: Introduction (Trademark Licenses)].

Specifying the paper type ([Paper Type:])

In [Paper Type:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray], select the type of paper for printing. This function is enabled when [Paper Tray:] is set to [Auto].

	Paper Tray / Output Tray
Paper View Detailed Information	Paper Tray:
8 1/2×11 W 8 1/2×11	Auto
	Paper Type: Thick 1+
	Paper Settings for Each Tray
	Output Tray: Default
×1	
Printer Information	Carbon Copy
	Default
	Cancel Print

In [Paper Settings for Each Tray...], you can set a paper type for each tray. When you specify anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray:], the paper type information specified here is applied.

		Paper Settings	for Each Tray
	Paper Tray	Paper Type	
	Tray1	Plain Paper	
	Tray2	Thick 1+	
	Tray3	Plain Paper	
	Tray4	Plain Paper	
	Bypass Tray	Plain Paper	
	Paper Tray : Tray2		
	Paper Type:		
	Thick 1+	+	
	Reflect D	evice Status	Save Settings
-	Default)	Cancel OK

In [Paper Tray:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray], select the paper tray for printing.

Paper View	Paper Tray / Output Tray
O Detailed Information	Paper Tray:
8 1/2×11	Auto
8 1/2×11	Paper Type:
	Plain Paper
	Paper Settings for Each Tray
	Output Tray:
	Default
	x1
Printer Information	Carbon Copy Carbon Copy Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

Tips

 If you select [Auto], the paper tray for the paper you have selected in [Paper Size:] is automatically selected.

Printing on paper in multiple trays ([Carbon Copy])

You can print the original on different sheets of paper loaded in multiple trays. Because you can obtain printing results that look like carbon-copied slips using the print command once, this function is called Carbon Copy.

For example, by using the print command once, you can print a submission document on high-quality color paper loaded in **Tray1** and print your copy on recycled paper loaded in **Tray2**.

This function is useful when you want to create a submission document and its copy at one time.



- 1 In [Paper Tray:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray], select the paper tray for printing the original.
 - → You cannot select [Auto].

Paper View O Detailed Information	per Tray / Output Tray 🗘
8 1/2×11 ▼ 8 1/2×11	Tray1
	Paper Type: Plain Paper +
	Paper Settings for Each Tray
	Output Tray:
×1	Default
Printer Information	Carbon Copy Carbon Copy Settings
	Default

2 Select the [Carbon Copy] check box.

Paper View	Paper Tray / Output Tray
O Detailed Information	Paper Tray:
8 1/2×11 ▼	Tray1
8 1/2×11	Paper Type:
	Plain Paper 🔹
	Paper Settings for Each Tray
	Output Tray:
	Default
	×1
	Carbon Copy
Printer Information	Carbon Copy Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

The [Carbon Copy Settings] window appears.

3 Specify the paper tray for carbon copies and output order, and click [OK].

Carbon C	opy Settings
Original Copy Tray1 Output Order Tray Page	Carbon Copy Tray Tray1 Tray2 Tray3 Tray4
Color Control months	Bypass Tray
[Original Copy].	lect the same Paper Tray that is specified in
Save Settings Do not show this window wh	en setting
Do not snow this window wh	en setting
Default	Cancel OK

Settings	Description
[Original Copy]	The paper tray for printing the original is displayed.
[Carbon Copy Tray]	Select the paper tray for carbon copies. Select the check boxes for all paper trays to be used.
[Output Order]	 Select the order of outputting carbon copies. [Tray]: Carbon copies are printed in order of selected trays. When an original of multiple pages is printed, all pages are printed on paper from one tray, then the next tray is used. [Page]: Carbon copies are printed page by page. When an original of multiple pages is printed, each page is printed on paper from all the selected trays.

3.3.2 Printing multiple sets of copies

Specifying the number of copies ([Copies:])

In [Copies:] in [Copies & Pages], specify the number of copies you want to print.

Desertes	Standard	
Presets:	Standard	
Copies:	3 Collated	
Pages:	• All	
	O From: 1 to: 1	
Paper Size:	8 1/2×11 \$ 8.50	by 11.00 inches
	17. 10.	
Orientation:		
	TextEdit	•
Prin	t header and footer	



Reference

When you print a large number of copies, use of the Proof Print function will prevent a large number of misprints being created, thereby reducing the amount of waste paper generated. For details, refer to page 3-49.

Printing by sets ([Collate]/[Offset])

3

When multiple sets of copies are printed, the paper output position of each set is staggered to help you locate the first page of each set.



When the [Collate] check box in [Output Method] is selected, copies are output in a set-by-set manner, for example, "Pages 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5", "Pages 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5", and then "Pages 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5". When the [Offset] check box is selected, the sets are output in staggered layers.

When you select both [Collate] and [Offset] check boxes, the output position is staggered for each set, allowing you to easily prepare handouts.

Printer:	Printer Name
Presets:	Standard
Copies: Pages:	
Paper Size:	8 1/2x11 8.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:	
10	Output Method
Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 W 8 1/2x11	Collate
	Output Method: Print
	x 6 User Authentication
Printer Information.	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

3.3.3 Saving Paper by Printing on Both Sides ([2-Sided])

By using both sides of paper for printing, you can halve paper consumption.



In [Print Type:] in [Layout / Finish], select [2-Sided].

Layo	ut / Finish
Paper View O Detailed Information	Layout Finish
8 1/2×11 ▼ 8 1/2×11	Print Type: 2-Sided
8 1/2×11	Binding Position:
	Left Bind
	Poster Mode: Off Overlap width line
× 1	Rotate 180
	Image Shift
Printer Information	Chapters
	Default
	Cancel Print

3.3.4 Binding printed sheets

Staple papers ([Staple:])

Each set of papers can be stapled (at a corner or at two positions) and output automatically. This function is useful for preparing a project proposal or other booklet materials.



In [Layout / Finish], select the [Staple:] check box. In addition, specify the number and positions of staples.

81/2×11	Staple:	
▼ 8 1/2×11	Left Corner	+
	Punch:	
	Off	A V
	Fold & Staple:	
	Off	A T
	Paper Arrangement:	\$
a a s	Prioritize Arranging Papers	•
Printer Information	Detail Settings	
		Default

Tips

- To use [Staple:], the optional **Finisher** is required.
- In [Binding Position:] in [Layout / Finish], specify the staple position.

Punching the printed sheets ([Punch:])

Printed sheets are punched for filing before they are output. This function is useful when you want to bind printed materials in files.



In [Layout / Finish], select the [Punch:] check box. In addition, specify the number and positions of punch holes.

Paper View	Layout Finish	
O Detailed Information		
8 1/2×11	Staple:	
▼	Off	*]
8 1/2×11	Punch:	
	2-Hole	•
	Fold & Stephen	
	Fold & Staple:	
• = = = []	Off	÷
	Page Fold Setting:	
× 1	Off	*]
	Paper Arrangement:	
	Prioritize Arranging Papers	÷
🖬 🛛 🖂 🖓		
Printer Information	Detail Settings	
	De	fault
	Cance	

Tips

- To use [Punch:], the optional **Finisher** and **Punch Kit** are required.
- In [Binding Position:] in [Layout / Finish], specify the punch position.
- The number of punched holes varies depending on the country you are in.

Binding in the center of the paper ([Fold & Staple:])

The printed sheets are bound in the center and folded before they are output.



In [Fold & Staple:] in [Layout / Finish], select [Center Staple and Fold].

As the sheets are bound in the center, use the combined document data or set the [Print Type:] to [Booklet] on the [Layout / Finish] tab.

	Layout / Finish
Paper View O Detailed Information	Layout Finish
8 1/2×11	Staple:
	Off 🛟
8 1/2×11	Punch:
	Off \$
	UII VII
	Fold & Staple:
	Center Staple and Fold
	x 1 Off \$ Paper Arrangement: Prioritize Arranging Papers
	Prioritize Arranging Papers
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	when folded into a booklet is twice of ected in the [Paper Size] box. Default
	(Cancel)

Tips

3

• To use [Center Staple and Fold], the optional **Finisher** and **Saddle Kit** are required.

Folding papers ([Fold & Staple:])

The printed sheets are creased before they are output.

Half-Fold



Tri-Fold



Z-Fold

|--|--|

In [Fold & Staple:] in [Layout / Finish], select the folding mode.

When you want to fold page by page, specify the number of pages to be folded at one time in [Page Fold Setting].

(Layout / Finish
 Paper View Detailed Information 	Layout Finish
8 J/2x11 8 J/2x11	Staple: Off Punch: Off Fold & Staple: Half-Fold(By Copy Job) Page Fold Setting: Off Page Fold Setting: Off Page Arrangement: Prioritize Arranging Papers Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

Tips

- To use Center Staple & Fold, Half-Fold, or Tri-Fold of [Fold & Staple:], the optional **Finisher** and **Saddle Kit** are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold & Staple:], the optional Finisher and Z-Fold Unit are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold & Staple:], specify the paper size described at the setting you selected from the drop-down list ([Z-Fold (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8K)], [Z-Fold (8 1/2 × 14)] at "Paper Size" of the application software or printer driver.

• This function cannot be used on originals that contain more pages than the number of pages that can be folded by this machine.

Printing in a booklet format ([Booklet])

The pages in the original data are arranged and spread out in booklet format and printed on both sides of sheets. When the printed sheets are stacked and folded in two, the pages are arranged in the correct order.



In [Print Type:] in [Layout / Finish], select [Booklet].

 Paper View Detailed Information 	Layout Finish
8 1/2×11	Print Type:
▼ 8 1/2×11	Booklet
	Binding Position:
	Left Bind
	Poster Mode:
	Off 🔶
	Overlap width line
×1	
	Rotate 180
	Image Shift
E E E E CAL	Chapters
	Detail Settings
Printer Information	
The finished size when the paper size selected	folded into a booklet is twice of in the [Paper Size] box. Default
3	

Tips

- By selecting [Fold & Staple:] in [Layout / Finish] in combination with this function, you can create booklet-form documents by folding the printed sheets in the center or by binding them using two staples in the center. To use [Fold & Staple:], the optional **Finisher** and **Saddle Kit** are required.
- By selecting [Chapters] in the [Layout / Finish] tab in combination with this function, you can place the specified page on the front side.

Specifying the output tray ([Output Tray:])

In [Output Tray:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray], select the tray to which printed sheets are output.

Paper View Detailed Information	Paper Tray:
81/2×11	Auto
8 1/2×11	Paper Type:
	Plain Paper 🔷
	Paper Settings for Each Tray
	Output Tray:
	Tray1
×1	
	Carbon Copy
Printer Information	Carbon Copy Settings
	Default

3.3.5 Adjusting the layout

Printing a poster-sized image ([Poster Mode:])

The original image is enlarged, divided, and printed on multiple sheets. When you join the printed sheets together, a large poster is created.



In [Poster Mode:] in [Layout / Finish], select N \times N. For example, when you select [2 \times 2], one page of the original image is enlarged, divided, and printed on four sheets.

To create overlap margins, select the [Overlap width line] check box.

(Layout / Finish
 Paper View Detailed Information 	Layout Finish
8 1/2×11	Print Type:
▼ 8 1/2×11	1-Sided
8 1/2×11	Binding Position:
	Left Bind
	Poster Mode:
	2 x 2
	Overlap width line
	x 1 Rotate 180
-	Image Shift
	Chapters
	â
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Prir

Rotating the image 180 degrees ([Rotate 180])

The image is printed upside down. Use this function when printing on envelopes whose loading direction cannot be changed.



In [Layout / Finish], select the [Rotate 180] check box.

Paper View Detailed Information	Layout Finish
8 1/2×11	Print Type:
▼ 8 1/2×11	2-Sided
	Binding Position:
	Left Bind
	Poster Mode:
	Off +
	Overlap width line
× 1	Rotate 180
	Image Shift
	Chapters
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	(Cancel)

bizhub C754/C654

Fine-tuning the print position ([Image Shift])

You can fine tune the print position of the image upward, downward, rightward, and leftward with respect to the paper. When an image is printed on the back side, you can also fine tune its position.

Use this function when you want to make a fine adjustment, such as changing the print position a little or printing images in different positions between the front and back sides.



1 In [Layout / Finish], select the [Image Shift] check box.

Layou	t / Finish
Paper View Detailed Information	Layout Finish
8 1/2×11	Print Type:
V	2-Sided
8 1/2×11	Binding Position:
	Left Bind
	Poster Mode:
	Off +
	Overlap width line
x 1	Rotate 180
	Image Shift
	Chapters
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Default
	Cancel Print
	Cancer Print

The [Image Shift] window appears.

- 2 Adjust the upward/downward and rightward/leftward shift distances, and click [OK].
 - → When printing images on both sides, selecting the [Same value for Front and Back sides] check box applies the same settings to both sides.

Image	e Shift
Front Side	Back Side
Тор	Отор
Bottom	Bottom
0.00 (*) inch [0.00 9.84]	0.00 (*) inch [0.00 9.84]
Left 💿 Right	⊙ Left ◯ Right
0.00 (*) inch (0.00 9.84)	0.00 (*) inch [0.00 9.84]
6	Same value for Front and Back sides
[Back Side] is valid when [Print Type] i	s [2–Sided].
Save Settings	
Do not show this window when	setting

3.3.6 Adding text or an image to the original

3

Add the date and time ([Date/Time])

You can add the print date/time to your printouts. If necessary, you can select the print position and format of the text.



In [Stamp / Composition], select the [Date/Time] check box.

(Stamp / Composition
 Paper View Detailed Information 	Copy Security
8 1/2×11 ▼ 8 1/2×11	Settings
	Date/Time
	Page Number Settings
Printer Information	Header/Footer
	Default
	Cancel Print

As necessary, click [Settings...] to change the print position and format of the text.

For	mat:	
	07/1/23 1:23PM	
Pag	ges:	
	All Pages	
Ter	kt Color:	
10	Black	
	Red	
	Green	
I	Blue	
Prin	nt Position:	
	Top Left	8

Settings	Description	
[Format:]	Specify the format for the date/time.	
[Pages:]	Specify the range of pages on which the date/time is printed.	
[Text Color:]	Select the print color for the date/time.	
[Print Position:]	Specify the print position for the date/time.	

Adding a page number ([Page Number])

You can add page numbers to your printouts. If necessary, you can select the print position and the page from which the page number printing starts.



In [Stamp / Composition], select the [Page Number] check box.

	Stamp / Composition
Paper View Detailed Information	Copy Security
8 1/2×11 8 1/2×11	Settings
	Date/Time
	x 1 Settings
Printer Information	Header/Footer
	Default

As necessary, click [Settings...] to change the print position and the page from which the page number printing starts.

	Page Numb	er		
Starting Page				
1		[1 99999]		
Starting Page				
1		[1 99999]		
Cover Mod	e:			
Print on	Front and Bac	k Cover	•	
Text Color:				
Black			0	
Red				
Green			*	
Print Position				
Bottom			\$	
Save Settings				
	is window when	retting		

Settings	Description
[Starting Page:]	Specify the page from which the page number printing starts.
[Starting Page Number:]	Specify the page number to be printed on the page specified in [Starting Page:].
[Cover Mode:]	Select this check box to print page numbers on the front and back covers when they are inserted. In addition, select the format.
[Text Color:]	Select the print color for the page numbers.
[Print Position:]	Specify the print position for the page numbers.

Add information to header/footer ([Header/Footer])

You can add and print the date and time and arbitrary text in the top or bottom margin (header/footer) of the original. You must register the information to be added for header and footer in advance to this machine.



- ✔ For details on how to register the information to be added for header and footer, refer to page 7-8.
- 1 In [Stamp / Composition], select the [Header/Footer] check box, then click [Settings...].

	tamp / Composition
 Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11 	Copy Security Settings
	Date/Time Settings
	Page Number Settings
Printer Information	Header/Footer
	Default
	Cancel Print

- 2 Select the information to be added to the header/footer, and click [OK].
 - → As necessary, change the text color or the range of pages on which the header/footer is printed.

80
1
-

Settings

Description

[Recall Header/Footer:]

Select the header/footer to be recalled.

Settings	Description
[Distribution Control Number:]	 Select whether to print copy numbers when printing multiple sets of copies. [Print in Header]: Select this check box to print the copy number in the header. [Print in Footer]: Select this check box to print the copy number in the footer. [Start Number]: Specify the format for the copy numbers and the page from which the copy number printing starts.
[Pages:]	Select the range of pages on which the text is printed in the header/footer.
[Text Color:]	Select the color of the text to be added to the header/footer.

3.3.7 Deterring unauthorized copying

Adding a concealed security watermark ([Copy Protect])

Text such as "Copy" and "Private" are printed in the background pattern as concealed text. This function is called the Copy Protect function.

When a copy-protected document is copied, the concealed security watermark appears on the entire page, thereby indicating that it is an unauthorized copy.



1 In [Stamp / Composition], select the [Copy Security] check box, then click [Settings...].

(Stamp / Composition
Paper View O Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 W 8 1/2x11	Copy Security
	Date/Time
	x 1 Settings
Printer Information	Header/Footer Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

2 Select [Copy Protect], and click [OK].

3

→ As necessary, specify the text to be printed and the format of the text. For details, refer to page 3-34.

Copy Securit	y:		Password Copy
Copy Pro	tect	\$	Password:
	Print Item	Detail Setti	ngs
-			
⊠ C	haracters:		•
1.2	Invalid copy		
	ate/Time:		
	07/1/23	÷ 1:2	3PM 🗘
🗆 S	erial Number		
	istribution Cor	ntrol Number	: 1
Sta	art Number:	(A) O Put z	eros in front
	1	🖲 💿 Numł	per only
J	ob Number		
Save Settings			
Do not she	w this window w	hen setting	

Printing a stamp on the entire page ([Stamp Repeat])

Stamp such as "Copy" and "Private" are printed on the entire page.

By printing text such as "Copy" or "Private" as a visible stamp, you can deter unauthorized copying.



1 In [Stamp / Composition], select the [Copy Security] check box, then click [Settings...].

(Stamp / Composition
Paper View Detailed Information S1/2x11 S1/2x11	Copy Security Settings Date/Time Settings Page Number Header/Footer Settings
Printer Information	Default
	Cancel Print

- 2 Select [Stamp Repeat], and click [OK].
 - → As necessary, specify the text to be printed and the format of the text. For details, refer to page 3-34.

Password: Print Item Detail Settings Characters: Invalid copy Date/Time: '07/1/23 \$ 1:23PM \$
Characters: Invalid copy Date/Time: ('07/1/23 \$) 1:23PM \$
Characters: Invalid copy Date/Time: ('07/1/23 \$) 1:23PM \$
Invalid copy • Date/Time: • '07/1/23 •
Invalid copy • Date/Time: • '07/1/23 •
Date/Time: '07/1/23 \$ 1:23PM
(1:23PM ↓)
Serial Number
Distribution Control Number: 1
Start Number: O Put zeros in front
1 O rat zeros in Hont
🗌 Job Number
ttings

Add copy restriction information ([Copy Guard])

Copy Guard is a copy protection function that prints concealed security watermarks such as "Private" or a date in the background to prevent unauthorized copying, and embeds a copy restriction pattern on all printed sheets.

If an attempt is made using a device that supports the copy guard function to copy a sheet that has been copy protected, a copy guard pattern is scanned, the copying process is canceled, and the job is deleted.



✓ To use [Copy Guard], you need to install the optional Security Kit and enable the Copy Guard function of this machine. For details on how to enable the Copy Guard function, refer to page 7-15.

bizhub C754/C654

1 In [Stamp / Composition], select the [Copy Security] check box, then click [Settings...].

Copy security Copy security Copy security Settings Date/Time Settings Page Number Settings Header/Footer	Copy security Settings Page Number Settings	Paper View Detailed Information	Stamp / Composition
x 1 Settings Header/Footer	x 1 Settings Page Number Settings Header/Footer Settings	8 1/2×11	Copy Security Settings
x 1 Settings	x 1 Settings Header/Footer Printer Information		
	Printer Information		Settings
		a	

- 2 Select [Copy Guard], and click [OK].
 - → As necessary, specify the text to be printed and the format of the text. For details, refer to page 3-34.

Copy Security:			Password	Сору
Copy Guard		•	Password	l:
	Print Item	Detail Setti	ngs	
🗹 Chara	acters:			
In	valid copy		÷	
🗌 Date,	Time:			
0'	7/1/23	* 1:23	BPM \$)
Seria	Number			
Distri	bution Cor	trol Number		1
Start N		O But a	eros in front	
1		Numb		
Job N	umber			
Save Settings				
Do not show the	is window w	nen setting		

Add a password ([Password Copy])

Password Copy is a copy protection function that prints concealed security watermarks such as "Private" or a date in the background to prevent unauthorized copying, and embeds a password for the password copy function on all printed sheets.

If an attempt is made using a device that supports the password copy function to copy a sheet that has been prepared for password copy, a password copy pattern is scanned and entry of a password is requested. Copying starts if the correct password is entered.



- ✓ To use [Password Copy], you need to install the optional Security Kit and enable the Password Copy function of this machine. For details on how to enable the Password Copy function, refer to page 7-15.
- 1 In [Stamp / Composition], select the [Copy Security] check box, then click [Settings...].

Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11	Stamp / Composition
	Date/Time Settings Page Number Header/Footer Settings
Printer Information	Default
	(Cancel) Print

- 2 Select [Password Copy], enter the password to be embedded (using up to eight characters), and then click [OK].
 - → As necessary, specify the text to be printed and the format of the text. For details, refer to page 3-34.

Copy Security	r:		Password Copy
Password	Сору	•	Password:
			•••••
	Print Item	Detail Setti	ngs
C C	haracters:		•
	Invalid copy		
D	ate/Time:		
	'07/1/23	* 1:23	BPM 🗘
🗌 Si	rial Number		
	istribution Cor	ntro <mark>l N</mark> umber:	1
Sta	rt Number:	Ontra	eros in front
	1	O Put 20	
□ Jo	b Number	0	
Save Settings			
Do not sho	w this window w	hen setting	

Configuring the print settings for Copy Security

When printing a copy security pattern on sheets, you can set the text to be printed and the format of the text as necessary.

1 In [Stamp / Composition], select the [Copy Security] check box, then click [Settings...].

(Stamp / Composition
Paper View O Detailed Information 8 1/2×11	Copy Security
8 1/2×11	Settings
	Date/Time
	x 1 Settings
	Header/Footer Settings
	Default
	(Cancel) (Print

- 2 In the [Print Item] tab, select the item to be printed.
 - → Items that can be specified vary depending on the selected copy security function.

Copy Securit	y:		Password Cop	y
Copy Pro	otect	•	Password:	
	Print Item De	tail Setti	ngs	
đ				
	haracters: Invalid copy		•	
	Date/Time:			
	07/1/23 ‡	1:2:	BPM 🛟	
<u> </u>	erial Number			
	Distribution Control	Number	()	1
St	art Number:	 Put ze Numb 	eros in front	
	ob Number	(C) Nume	er only	
Save Settings				
	ow this window when se	etting		
Do not sh	ow this which when s	eung		

Settings	Description
[Characters:]	Select this check box to print a text. In addition, select the text you want to print. You can select the text to be printed from the registered preset stamps and stamps registered by users.
[Date/Time:]	Select this check box to add the print date/time. If necessary, specify the format.
[Serial Number]	Select this check box to print the serial number of this machine.
[Distribution Control Number:]	Select this check box to print copy numbers when printing multiple sets of copies. If necessary, specify the format for the copy numbers and the page from which the copy number printing starts.
[Job Number]	Select this check box to print the job numbers managed in this machine.

- 3 In the [Detail Settings] tab, set the print format.
 - → Items that can be specified vary depending on the selected copy security function.

	Copy Security		
🌂 Copy Security:		Password Copy	
Copy Protect		Password:	
Pri	int Item Detail Set	tings	
Text Size	e: Standard	+	
Angle	e: 0 degrees		
	c. O degrees		
Pattern	n: Emboss Backgrou	und 😫 🛕	
Pattern Overwrite	e: Front (Overwrite)		
Background Patter	n: Pattern 1	_	
	Adjust Color		
Save Settings			
-	window when setting		
<u> </u>			
(Default)	(ancel OK	

Settings	Description
[Text Size:]	Select the size of the text to be printed.
[Angle:]	Select the angle of the text to be printed.
[Pattern:]	Select whether the text pattern is embossed or outlined when the original is subjected to unauthorized copying.
[Pattern Overwrite:]	Select whether to compose the copy security pattern on the front or back side of the original.
[Background Pattern:]	Select the copy security pattern from the background patterns registered in this machine.
[Adjust Color]	Adjust the density and contrast.

4 Click [OK].

3

3.3.8 Inserting paper into the original

Inserting front/back covers ([Front Cover:]/[Back Cover:])

You can insert cover sheets, which may be different from those used for the body, before the first page and after the end page of the original.

The front and rear cover sheets can be a paper different from body pages (in paper color and thickness). You can print them at a time.



1 In [Paper Tray:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray], select the paper tray for printing the body.

→ You cannot select [Auto].

Paper View Detailed Information	aper Tray / Output Tray
8 1/2×11	Paper Tray: Tray2
▼ 8 1/2×11	
	Paper Type:
	Plain Paper +
	Paper Settings for Each Tray
	Output Tray:
	Default
×	
	Carbon Copy
	Carbon Copy Settings
Printer Information	
	Default
	Delaur
	Cancel Pri
- 2 In [Cover Mode / Transparency Interleave], select the [Front Cover:] and [Back Cover:] check boxes.
 - → If necessary, you can select whether to print the original on the inserted sheets or to leave them blank. When the inserted sheets are printed, the first page of the original is printed on the front cover and the last page of the original is printed on the back cover.
 - → Select the paper trays for paper to be inserted as the front and back covers.



Inserting front/back covers ([Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter])

You can insert the optional post inserter paper before the first page or after the last page of the text as the outer front cover.



- 1 In [Paper Tray:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray], select the paper tray for printing the body.
 - → You cannot select [Auto].

x1 Output Tra Defa	
x1 Defa	
Carbon	opy Carbon Copy Settings
Printer Information	Default

- 2 In [Cover Mode / Transparency Interleave], select the [Front Cover from Post Inserter] and [Back Cover from Post Inserter] check boxes.
 - → Select the PI trays for paper to be inserted as the front and back covers.

1/2x11 1/2x11 0ff iff
Diff Image: Constraint of the second secon
Back Cover: Off 0ff 0ff ♥ Front Cover from Post Inserter:
Off ↓ Off ↓ Off ↓ Øff
x1
x 1 Front Cover from Post Inserter:
×1
PI Tray1
PI Tray1
Printer Information
PI Tray1

Tips

3

• To use [Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter], the optional **Post Inserter** is required.

Inserting paper between transparencies ([Transparency Interleave:])

When printing on multiple OHP transparencies, you can insert the specified paper between the OHP transparencies. These sheets of paper prevent the OHP transparencies from sticking together due to heat generated during printing or static electricity.



1 In [Print Type:] in [Layout / Finish], select [1-Sided].

L	ayout / Finish
 Paper View Detailed Information 	Layout Finish
8 1/2×11 8 1/2×11	Print Type: 1-Sided
6 1/2×11	Binding Position:
	Poster Mode: Off Overlap width line
	I Rotate 180 Image Shift Chapters
Printer Information	Detail Settings Default
	Cancel Print

2 In [Select Color:] in [Quality], select [Gray Scale].

	Quality
Paper View Detailed Information	Basic Application
O Detailed Information	Select Color:
	Gray Scale
	Color Settings: Document Quality Adjustment Resolution: 600dpi
Printer Information	
	Default

3 In [Paper Type:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray], select [Transparency].

O Detailed Information 8 1/2x11	Paper Tray:
▼ 8 1/2×11	
	Paper Type: Transparency
	Paper Settings for Each Tray
	Output Tray:
	Default
	(1
Printer Information	Carbon Copy Carbon Copy Settings
	Default

- 4 In [Cover Mode / Transparency Interleave], select [Transparency Interleave:].
 - \rightarrow Select the paper tray for the paper to be inserted between OHP transparencies.
 - → OHP interleaves are inserted as blank sheets.

talied information x11 x11 Blank ↓ Tray1 ↓ Tray1 ↓	Blank	T
x11 Blank Tray1 Tray1 Tray1 Tray1		T
Tray1	(Tray1	•
rinter Information		
Default		

Inserting paper into the specified pages ([Per Page Setting:])

Paper different from other pages is inserted into the specified pages.

You can select color paper and thick paper as paper to be inserted. You can also select whether to print the original on the inserted paper.



Create in advance a list that specifies the paper and print settings for each page. When printing on inserted paper, select the list you want to apply to printing.

- 1 In [Per Page Setting], select the [Per Page Setting:] check box, and the click [Add...].
 - → If nothing is registered in the list, selecting the [Per Page Setting:] check box automatically displays the setting window.
 - → When you have already prepared a list, select the list you want to apply to printing.

	Per Page Setting	_
Pracer View Detailed information \$ 1/2x11 \$ 1/2x11 U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U	Per Page Setting: List01 Add Delete Edit	
	Default	
	Cancel Print)

2 Create a list by specifying the paper and print settings for each page.

		Per Page Set	ting		
ist Name:	Page Number	Print Type	Paper Tray	Staple	
List01	Body Text 1-		Auto	Off	
LISTOI	■ 1-3	Print Insert d Print (2-Sided)	Same as Body Auto	Same as Body Off	
	[] 500, m L.		, 1010		
		Add) Delete	C	
	Add/Edit				
1-3	Page Number:				
	1-3				
	Entry Examp	le 2,4,6-10			
	Print Type:				
	Print Type:	urt .	a		
	Frint inse	art I	-		
	Paper Tray:		Staple		
	Same as	Body	Si Si	ame as Body	¢
	cherry a				
			(Cancel Cancel	OK

Settings	Description
Setting List	The settings for each page are displayed in a list.
[List Name:]	Enter the name of the list to be created.
[▲]/[▼]	These buttons move the order of settings in the list. They do not change the settings.
[Add]	This button adds the setting to the list.
[Delete]	This button deletes the setting selected in the list.
[Add/Edit]	You can add settings to the Setting List or edit settings.
[Page Number:]	Enter the page numbers you want to add. To specify multiple page numbers, separate each number with a comma (for example, "2,4,6") or connect the numbers using a hyphen (for example, "6-10").
[Print Type:]	Select the print type applied when printing the specified pages.
[Paper Tray:]	Select the paper tray for printing the specified pages.
[Staple:]	Select the staple position applied when the specified pages are stapled.

3 Click [OK].

3.3.9 Specifying the color and image quality

Selecting colors for printing ([Select Color:])

Select colors for printing. There are three color modes: [Auto Color] that fits the original color, [Full Color] and [Gray Scale].



In [Select Color:] in [Quality], select a color mode for printing.

Detailed Information	Select Color:
	Auto Color
	Color Settings:
	Document
	Quality Adjustment
	Resolution:
	600dpi
Printer Information	
Printer Information	
	Default

Selecting the optimum color representation for the original ([Color Settings:])

Select the optimum settings for the original to print it at the optimum image quality level.

Select one of the following processes according to the original to be printed; the process suitable for originals consisting primarily of text, the process suitable for photos, the process suitable for originals created with DTP, the process suitable for printing Web pages, or the process suitable for printing CAD data.

|--|

In [Color Settings:] in [Quality], select the optimum color setting mode for the original.

	lity	
Paper View Detailed Information	Basic Application	
	Select Color:	
	Auto Color	•
	Color Settings:	
	Document	÷
	Quality Adjustment	
	Resolution:	
	600dpi	÷
	ocoupi	
Printer Information		
		Default
	E	

3

Г

Making the image glossy ([Glossy Mode])

Images are printed with a glossy finish.



In [Quality], select the [Glossy Mode] check box.

	Quality		•
Paper View Detailed Information		Basic Applic	ation
O Detailed Information	Glossy	Mode	
	🗌 Toner S	ave	
	🗌 Edge Er	hancement	
	🗌 Auto T	rapping	
	Black Over	Print:	
	Off		÷
Printer Information			
			Default
			Cancel Print

Tips

• This function is enabled when [Print Type:] is set to [1-Sided].

Preventing the generation of white space around images ([Auto Trapping]/[Black Over Print:])

The generation of white space on the boundary between different colors or around characters is prevented.



In [Quality], select the [Auto Trapping] check box or configure the [Black Over Print:] setting.

- Select the [Auto Trapping] check box to superimpose neighboring colors to print so as to prevent white space being generated around a picture.
- Configure the [Black Over Print:] setting to superimpose black color on a neighboring color to print so as to prevent white space being generated around black characters or figures. You can select whether to print black only around the characters or around both characters and figures.

	Quality	
 Paper View Detailed Information 	Basic Application	
Detailed Information	Glossy Mode	
	Toner Save	
	Edge Enhancement	
	Auto Trapping	
	Black Over Print: Text/Figure	
Printer Information		
Printer Information		
	Default	
	Cancel Print)

Saving toner ([Toner Save])

Selecting the [Toner Save] check box in [Quality] adjusts the printing density in order to save the amount of toner consumed.

(Quality
 Paper View Detailed Information 	Basic Application
	Glossy Mode
	Toner Save
	Edge Enhancement
	Auto Trapping Black Over Print: Off
Printer Information	
	Default
	Cancel Print

bizhub C754/C654

Increasing the legibility of small or faint text ([Edge Enhancement])

Sharpen the edges of images such as text in the table and graphics to improve legibility.



In [Quality], select the [Edge Enhancement] check box.

(Quality
 Paper View Detailed Information 	Basic Application
	Glossy Mode
	Toner Save
	C Edge Enhancement
	Auto Trapping
	Black Over Print:
	Off
Printer Information	
	Default
	Cancel Print

3.3.10 Using ICC profiles

Specifying the ICC profiles for printing

Specify and print the ICC profiles registered in this machine with the printer driver.

- ✓ To use the new ICC profiles registered this machine, you need to add the ICC profiles to the printer driver in advance. For details, refer to page 3-47.
- 1 In [Quality], click [Quality Adjustment...].

O Paper View	Quality \$
• Detailed Information	Select Color:
	Auto Color
Lares	Color Settings: Document Quality Adjustment
	Resolution:
Printer Information.	Default
	(Cancel)

2 Specify the settings for [RGB Color:], [Destination Profile:], and [Simulation Profile:].
 → The ICC profiles registered in the printer driver can be selected.

	Quality Adjustment	
Text	Photo	Figure/Table/Graph
Color Matching:	Color Matching:	Color Matching:
Auto	Auto	Auto 🛟
Pure Black:	Pure Black:	Pure Black:
Auto	Auto	Auto \$
Screen:	Screen:	Screen:
Auto	Auto	Auto \$
	Smoothing:	Smoothing:
	Auto	Auto 🛟
RGB Color:	RGB Color:	RGB Color:
sRGB	sRGB	sRGB \$
Destination Profile:	Destination Profile:	Destination Profile:
Auto	\$ Auto	\$ Auto \$
Simulation		
Simulation Profile:	CMYK Gray Treatment:	
None	Composite Black	Altch Paper Color
		Manage Profile
		Download Manager

3 Click [OK].

Color processing is performed according to the selected ICC profiles.

Adding ICC profiles to the printer driver

To use the ICC profiles registered in this machine for printing, you need to add the ICC profiles to the printer driver in advance.

- ✓ This function is available if the computer can communicate with this machine. The computer communicates with this machine and loads ICC profiles that the machine can use.
- ✓ To register ICC profiles in this machine, use **Download Manager(bizhub)**. For details on how to register ICC profiles in this machine, refer to the Help for **Download Manager(bizhub)**.
- 1 In [Quality], click [Quality Adjustment...].

	Quality
Paper View Detailed Information	Basic Application
O Detailed Information	Select Color:
	Auto Color
	Color Settings: Document Quality Adjustment Resolution: 600dpi
Printer Information.	
Printer information.	
	Default
	(Cancel) (Pr

- 2 Click [Manage Profile].
 - → If the Download Manager(bizhub) has been installed and if you click [Download Manager], the Download Manager(bizhub) starts.

ext	Photo	Figure/Table/Graph		
Color Matching:	Color Matching:	Color Matching:		
Auto	Auto 😫	Auto		
Pure Black:	Pure Black:	Pure Black:		
Auto	Auto 🛟	Auto		
Screen:	Screen:	Screen:		
Auto	Auto 🛟	Auto		
	Smoothing:	Smoothing:		
	Auto	Auto		
RGB Color:	RGB Color:	RGB Color:		
sRGB	sRGB \$	sRGB 🗘		
Destination Profile:	Destination Profile:	Destination Profile:		
Auto	¢ Auto ¢	Auto		
imulation				
Simulation Profile:	CMYK Gray Treatment:			
None	Composite Black	Match Paper Color		
		Manage Profile		
		Download Manager		

3 Select a color profile type from the drop-down list.

Available Profile			Driver Profile List	
File Name	Profile Name	Add Sel->	File Name	Profile Name
	e Information	New/Edit	New	Delete
the [Add Sel] or add a new driver	tings programmed the driver list, click [Add All] button. To r list, click the [New] n type in the [File	File Name:		
	ile Name].	Profile Name:	Save Location:	

- 4 Select the desired profile from the [Available Profile] list, then click [Add Sel].
 - → To register the current driver settings as the profile, click [New], then enter the [File Name] and [Profile Name].
 - → The profile name can be changed in [New/Edit].

		_	Driver Profile List	
File Name	Profile Name		File Name	Profile Name
			JC2001.icc	JC2001_type3
		Add Sel->		
		Add All->		
() + +	J	() • •
Obtain De	evice Information		New	Delete
		New/Edit		
	settings programmed	File Name:		
	r to the driver list, click or [Add All] button. To	JC2001.icc	_	
	river list, click the [New]	JC2001.ICC		
button, and	then type in the [File			
Name] and [I	Profile Name].	Profile Name:	Save Location	:
		JC2001_type3	Disk	

5 Click [OK].

The profile is added to [Driver Profile List].

3.4 Printing options

3.4.1 Making a Trial Printing ([Proof Print])

Proof Print

The Proof Print function is used when printing multiple copies. It allows the printer to output one copy and pause the printing operation before printing the remaining copies.

Because you can check the print result before starting printing the remaining copies from the **Touch Panel**, this function is helpful to prevent a lot of misprints.



How to print from the computer

1 In [Output Method:] in the [Output Method] window, select [Proof Print].

Paper View Detailed Information	ut Method ♀ ♥ Collate ● Offset
x 1	Output Method: ✓ Print Secure Print Save in User Box and Print Proof Print ID&Print Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel

2 Specify the number of copies, then execute printing.Only one copy is printed. Continue to "Operations on this machine".

Operations on this machine

1 Tap [Job List].

3



2 While [In Progress] is displayed, tap [Release Job].

In Progress	Log	Comm.	List		
lo. Type	Doc. Name / Dest	ination Time	No. of Copies	Status/Result	Select Job Ty 💵 All
					Delete
					Increase Priorit
					Release Job
			V - V		
		All Scar	Fax	L1 L2	

3 Select the job you want to print.

Delever			_	_			_
Release Held Jobs To copy one set for proofing, press (Proof Copy).							
No.	Tvpe	Doc. Name / Destination	Time	No. of Copies	Status/Result	_	
0017	PRINTER	Print.txt	10:44		1 Job Stored		
						Delete	
						Change Setting	n,
						Settings	
						Details	
							l
-	_					Cance Start	

- 4 If necessary, tap [Change Setting] to change the print conditions.
- 5 Tap [Start] or press the **Start** key. The remaining copies are printed.

3.4.2 Printing Highly Confidential Documents ([Secure Print])

Secure Print

The Secure Print function allows you to set an ID and a password for print data and to save the data in a box (Secure Print User Box) on this machine. Because the data is not printed within a short time period, this function prevents printed materials from being missing or left unattended.

Since you need to enter the ID and password from the **Touch Panel** to print the data saved in the box, this function is particularly suitable for safely printing highly confidential documents.



Related setting (for the administrator)

• You can limit printing from the computer only to Secure Print. (Default: [No]). For details, refer to page 7-15.

How to print from the computer

1 In [Output Method:] in the [Output Method] window, select [Secure Print].

Paper View O Detailed Information s1/2x11 s1/2x11	ut Method
	Output Method: ✓ Print Secure Print Save in User Box Save in User Box and Print Proof Print ID&Print
Printer Information	Detail Settings Default
	Cancel

2 Enter the ID and password, then click [OK].

	Secure Print		
	Secure Print ID: Password:		
Save Settings Do not show this window when setting			
	Default Cancel OK		

- → When the [Save Settings] check box is selected, the settings are saved. When the [Do not show this window when setting] check box is selected, this dialog box is not displayed next time. If you always use the same ID and password, selecting this check box eliminates the need for entering them each time.
- 3 Execute printing.

3

The data is saved in the Secure Print User Box. Continue to "Operations on this machine".

Operations on this machine

Data printed using the Secure Print function is saved in the Secure Print User Box. To print the saved data, you need to enter the ID and password specified in the printer driver.

For details on the printing procedure, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].

Related setting (for the administrator)

- You can delete all data saved in the Secure Print User Box. For details, refer to page 7-6.
- You can set a time to delete files automatically from the Secure Print User Box (Initial value: [1 day]). For details, refer to page 7-6.

3.4.3 Saving print data in the Box on this machine ([Save in User Box])

Save in User Box

The Save in User Box function saves print data in a box on this machine. You can also print the data at the same time as it is being saved in the box.

You can use multiple User Boxes for different purposes, for example:

- By saving data in a box that all users can access (Public Box) or in a box that the members of a specific department can access (Group Box), you can distribute the data.
- By saving data in the private box (Personal Box), you can assure security because only you can open the box. The data in the box is not deleted by mistake.



Operations required to use this function

Register the boxes for storing print data on this machine.

For information on the procedure for registering boxes, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].

Reference

You can also register boxes using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

How to print from the computer

- 1 In [Output Method:] in the [Output Method] window, select [Save in User Box].
 - → When you want to print the data at the same time it is saved in the box, select [Save in User Box and Print].

	Output Method
Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11	Collate
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

- 2 Enter the file name and the box number of the save location, click [OK].
 - → Use a file name that helps you locate the data in the box.

	Save in User Box	
	File Name:	
	User Box Number:	
	Save Settings	
Do not show this window when setting		
	Default Cancel OK	

- → When the [Save Settings] check box is selected, the settings are saved. When the [Do not show this window when setting] check box is selected, this dialog box is not displayed next time. If you always use the same file name and box number, selecting this check box eliminates the need for entering them each time.
- 3 Execute printing.

The data is saved in the box on this machine.

Using data saved in a box

You can print or send data saved in a box via E-mail or fax.

- For information on how to print data saved in a box, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].
- For information on how to print data saved in a box, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].

3.4.4 Attaching authentication information

Printing when authentication is set

When printing a document in an environment where user authentication or account track is employed, you need to send the authentication information (user name and password) to this machine to execute printing. This requirement limits the users who can use this machine, preventing unauthorized use by a third party.

When this machine receives a print job from a user who is not allowed to print or a print job without authentication information, this machine automatically discards the job.



Related setting (for the administrator)

• You can specify the action that this machine takes when it receives a print job without authentication information (Default: [Restrict]). For details, refer to page 7-11.

Reference

When printing a highly confidential document in an environment where user authentication or account track is employed, using the ID & Print function enables high security printing. For details, refer to page 3-57.

If the quick authentication for printing server is installed, you can start printing by authentication with only the user name but without password entry. How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

How to print from the computer

1 In the [Output Method] window, select the [User Authentication] check box (and the [Account Track] check box).

Outp	out Method
Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2×11 8 1/2×11	Collate
	Output Method:
× 1	User Authentication
	Account Track
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

- 2 When user authentication is enabled, select [Recipient User], enter the user name and password, then click [OK].
 - → When this machine is accessible to public users (unregistered users), selecting [Public User] enables you to execute printing without entering the user name and password.
 - → When an external authentication server is used, click [User Authentication Server Setting...] and select the authentication server.

User Authentication			
Public User Recipient User			
User Name:			
Password:			
User Authentication Server Setting			
Save Settings Do not show this window when setting			
Default Cancel OK			

- → When the [Save Settings] check box is selected, the settings are saved. When the [Do not show this window when setting] check box is selected, this dialog box is not displayed next time. If you always use the same user name and password, selecting this check box eliminates the need for entering them each time.
- 3 If account track is enabled, enter the account name and password, then click [OK].

	Account Track
8	Department Name: Password:
	Save Settings Do not show this window when setting
	Default Cancel OK

- → When the [Save Settings] check box is selected, the settings are saved. When the [Do not show this window when setting] check box is selected, this dialog box is not displayed next time. If you always use the same account name and password, selecting this check box eliminates the need for entering them each time.
- 4 Execute printing.

Printing starts successfully when the authentication information is judged correct.

3.4.5 Printing at the Same Time as Authentication ([ID&Print])

ID & Print

The ID & Print function saves print data in a box on this machine in an environment where user authentication is employed. Because the data is not printed within a short time period, this function prevents printed materials from being missing or left unattended.

Since you need to be authenticated in this machine to print the data saved in the box, this function is suitable for safely printing highly confidential documents. When you are successfully authenticated, the print data of the login user is automatically printed. This enhances security as well as ensures smooth operation.



Related setting (for the administrator)

- You can specify the action that this machine takes when the ID & Print function is used. For details, refer to page 7-10.
- You can set a time to delete files automatically from the ID & Print User Box (Default: [1 day]). For details, refer to page 7-7.
- Select whether to ask the user if they want to delete the file from the ID & Print User Box after it is printed or to always delete the file without making confirmation (Default: [Confirm with User]). For details, refer to page 7-7.

How to print from the computer

1 In the [Output Method] window, select the [User Authentication] check box.

	Output Method
 Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11 	Collate
	Output Method:
	x 1 User Authentication
	Account Track
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

_3

2 Select [Recipient User], enter the user name and password, then click [OK].

User Authentication			
Public User Recipient User			
User Name:			
Password:			
User Authentication Server Setting			
Save Settings			
Do not show this window when setting			
Default Cancel OK			

3 In [Output Method:], select [ID&Print].

Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11	t Method
x 1	Output Method: ✓ Print Secure Print Save in User Box Save in User Box and Print Proof Print ID&Print Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

4 Execute printing.

The data is saved in the ID & Print User Box. Continue to "Operations on this machine".

1 Tap the keyboard icon in the [User Name] field, and enter the user name and password.

		Job List
Documents store printed upon suc and password an	d in the ID & Print User Box can be cessful authentication. Enter user name d then touch (Login) or press the [ID] key.	07/26/2011 y 18:46 M Memory C 100% K
	ID & Print ID & Print Access Access Basic Screen	Public User Access
User Name		
Password		
		C
		Login

- 2 Check that [ID & Print/MFP Access] is selected in [ID & Print], and tap [Login].
 - → When you select [Access Basic Screen] in [ID & Print], you can log in without starting printing.
 - → You can change the default value for [ID & Print] (Default: [Print & Access Basic Screen]) if necessary. For details, refer to page 7-11.

When you are successfully authenticated, all data items saved in the ID & Print User Box are printed.

🕌 Reference

To print a particular data item in the ID & Print User Box, open the ID & Print User Box and select the data item. For details on the printing procedure, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].

Operations on this machine (when an authentication unit is used)

When an optional **Authentication Unit (biometric type)** or **Authentication Unit (IC card type)** is used, you can execute printing just by touching the authentication unit with your finger or IC card.

- ✓ You may be required to enter the user name and password before touching the unit with your finger or IC card due to the authentication settings. Tap the keyboard icon in the [User Name] or [Password] field, and enter the user name or password.
- 1 Check that [Authentication Device] is selected in [Authentication Method].

		Job List
.		07/26/2011 γ 12×9 M Memory C 100% K ≔1
Authentication Method	ID & Print	
Authentication Device	ID & Print/ MFP Access	
ID & PW	Access Basic Screen	
User Name		
Password		
		C

- 2 Check that [ID & Print/MFP Access] is selected in [ID & Print], and touch the **Authentication Unit** with your finger or IC card.
 - → When you select [Access Basic Screen] in [ID & Print], you can log in without starting printing.
 - → You can change the default value for [ID & Print] (Default: [Print & Access Basic Screen]) if necessary. For details, refer to page 7-11.

When you are successfully authenticated, all data items saved in the ID & Print User Box are printed.

Related setting (for the administrator)

 When the ID & Print function is used on an Authentication Unit, you can select whether to request user authentication for printing each data item or to allow the user to print all data items once the user is authenticated (Default: [Print All Jobs]). For details, refer to page 7-10.

3.4.6 Printing on banner paper

Printing on banner paper

This machine accommodates paper with a length of up to 47-1/4 inches (1,200 mm) in the Bypass Tray.



Printable paper

Paper width	Paper length	Paper weight
8-1/4 to 11-11/16 inches (210 to 297 mm)	18 to 47-1/4 inches (457.3 to 1,200 mm)	33-13/16 to 55-7/8 lb (127 g/m ² to 210 g/m ²) (Using the printer driver, select the paper type appropriate for the weight of the banner paper to be used. 32-3/16 lb to 41-3/4 lb (121 g/m ² to 157 g/m ²): Thick 1+, Thick 1+ (Side 2) 42 lb to 55-5/8 lb (158 g/m ² to 209 g/m ²): Thick 2, Thick 2 (Side 2) 55-7/8 lb (210 g/m ²): Thick 3, Thick 3 (Side 2))

Tips

• When printing data on banner paper, select a paper type appropriate to the banner paper using the printer driver. Then, the [Paper Tray:] is set to [Bypass Tray] and [Resolution:] is fixed to [600dpi].

How to print on banner paper

Register the size of the banner paper, then specify the registered size.

- 1 On the **Touch Panel** of this machine, tap [Utility] [Banner Printing].
- 2 Select [Allow], then tap [OK].

	To activate	banner printing, choose [Allow].
Bookmark	Itility > B	anner Printing
Display Keypad		
Utility		
+		
Banner Printing		
		Allow Restrict
	07/26/2011	12:53 0K

- 3 Check that the screen waiting for banner printing job has appeared.
 - → If a job is received for printing on paper of a non-banner size while a banner print job is expected, that job is discarded.
 - → When a banner paper print job is queued, the machine cannot receive a facsimile.

Banner Printing. A banner print job is in the queue.	_	07/26/2011 12:57 Memory 100%	Y MCK
Touch [Exit] to cancel banner printing.			
	Exit		

When you have finished the above settings, start to print from the PC.

- 4 In the [Page Setup] (or [Paper Setup]) window, open the window for registering a custom size.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6, select [Manage Custom Sizes...] from the Paper Size list.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3, select [Custom Paper Size] from [Settings:].
- 5 Click [+] (Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6) or [Add] (Mac OS X 10.2/10.3).
- 6 Enter the name of the paper size you are registering.
 - → Be sure to use paper size names other than existing names, such as A4 and Custom.
- 7 Configure the following items.
 - → [Page Size] (Paper Size): Specify the width and length as desired. Specify the paper size within the allowable range of the banner size (Width:8-1/4 to 11-11/16 inches (210 mm to 297 mm), Length: 18 to 47-1/4 inches(457.3 mm to 1,200 mm)).
 - → [Printer Margins]: Specify the top, bottom, right, and left margins of the paper.

8 Click [OK] (Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6) or [Save] (Mac OS X 10.2/10.3).

The custom paper size is then registered.

- 9 In [Paper Size] in [Page Attributes], select the registered paper size.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, you can also select the paper size from [Paper Size:] in the Print window.
- 10 To display the Print window, click [Print] in the [File] menu.
- 11 Check to see that the custom paper size (registered in Step 8) is shown in the [Destination Paper Size] of [Paper Handling].
- 12 Check that [Paper Tray:] of [Paper Tray / Output Tray] is set to [Bypass Tray] and that the [Paper Type:] is set to the desired paper type ([Thick 1+]/[Thick 2]/[Thick 3]), and also they are grayed out to prevent them from being changed.
 - → If the [Paper Type:] is not set to [Thick 1+]/[Thick 2]/[Thick 3], set the paper type in [Paper Settings for Each Tray...].
 - → If the specified paper size is not in the allowable range of the banner size, [Paper Tray:] or [Paper Type:] is not grayed out to enable you to change them. In this case, check the setting of the custom paper size.

O Detailed Information	Paper Tray:	
Long Paper	Bypass Tray	A T
Long Paper	Paper Type:	
	Thick 1+	A V
	Paper Settings for Each Tray.	
	Output Tray:	
×1	Default	•
	Carbon Copy	
Printer Information	Carbon Copy Settings	
		Default

13 Execute printing.

A message appears on the Touch Panel to prompt you to load papers.

- 14 Load the banner paper into the Bypass Tray.
 - → For information on how to load banner paper into the Bypass Tray, refer to [User's Guide: Introduction (Trademark Licenses)].

15 When you have loaded a banner paper, tap [Complete].

Correctly po Banner P	osition paper in the b : X 47¼ Y 11‰	yypass tray. Thick 1+		Job List
			Complete]

Printing on the banner paper starts. Support the ejected banner paper by hand. To continue printing, execute printing from the computer.

16 Tap [Exit].

3

Banner Printing. A banner print job is in the queue.	_	07/26/2011 12:57 Memory 100%	Y M C K
Touch [Exit] to cancel banner printing.			
	Exit		

A message confirming the end of banner printing is displayed. To terminate printing, tap [Yes].



Encryption Passphrase

An encryption passphrase is information used for encrypting the password that is sent to this machine for printing using the printer driver.

When printing is executed, some functions may send an authentication password such as the user password or account password. The password is encrypted using the encryption passphrase specified in advance in this machine. However, you can change the encryption passphrase when necessary.

To change the encryption password, you need to set the same encryption passphrase in this machine and in the printer driver.

Tips

• If the encryption passphrase set in this machine differs from the one set in the printer driver, printing cannot be executed because this machine cannot decrypt the encrypted password.

Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

- 1 Tap [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Security Settings] [Driver Password Encryption Setting].
- 2 Select [User-Defined] and tap [Encryption Passphrase].



- 3 Tap [Encryption Passphrase] and enter the new encryption passphrase (up to 20 characters).
 - → Tap [Encryption Passphrase Confirmation], then enter the encryption passphrase again.
 - → An encryption passphrase using a series of the same letters (for example, "1111") is invalid.

Use the keyboard or keypad to enter the new encryption passphrase. You must enter the encryption passphrase baits no confirm. Press til to erase the encryption passphrase.
Administrator Settings > Driver Password Encryption Settings > Encryption Passphrase
Passphrase
Encryption Pass- Phrase Confirmation
← → <u>Pe</u> - lete
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - = `
q w e r t y u i o p [] \
asdfghjkl;
Z X C V b n n , . / Shift
07/26/2011 13:00

4 Tap [OK].

This sets the encryption passphrase.

Setting the printer driver

3

- ✓ Do not perform the following steps when you do not want to change the encryption passphrase on this machine.
- 1 In [Output Method] window, click [Detail Settings...].

(Output Method
Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11	Collate
	Output Method:
	x 1 User Authentication
	Account Track
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

2 Select [Administrator Settings], then click [Settings...].

	Detail Setting	gs	
ettings:			
Secure Print			
Save in User Box			
User Authenticat	on		
Account Track			
Administrator Se	ungs		
Expand All	Collapse All		
	Settings		
			ОК
			UK

- 3 Select the [Encryption Passphrase:] check box and enter the encryption passphrase (using up to 20 alphanumeric characters) that you have set on this machine.
 - → Do not select the [Encryption Passphrase] check box unless you want to change the encryption passphrase on this machine.

Administrator Settings
User Authentication/Account Track
Popup Authentication Dialog when printing
User Authentication
Account Track
Enhanced Server:
Off
Secure Print Popup Authentication Dialog when printing Print without Password Allow
Restrict
Encryption Passphrase
Encryption Passphrase:
Cancel OK

4 Click [OK].

Printing procedure

1 On the [Output Method] tab, set up the print function which uses the password for [Secure Print], [Save in User Box], [User Authentication] and others.

Outpu	ut Method
Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11	Collate
	Output Method: Print
×1	User Authentication
	Account Track
Printer Information	Detail Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

2 Execute printing.

The password is encrypted with the encryption passphrase being set by the printer driver, and the encrypted password is transmitted to this machine. The password is decrypted with the encryption passphrase being set on this machine, and it is printed out or stored in the box.

3.5 Setting items in the printer driver

3

3.5.1 [Page Setup] window of the printer driver

How to display the [Page Setup] window

- 1 Open the data in the application. From the [File] menu, click [Page Setup] (or [Paper Setup]).
- 2 Check that the desired printer is selected in [Format for:]. The [Page Attributes] window appears.

Settings:	Page Attributes
Format for:	Printer Name
Paper Size:	PS
Orientation:	8.50 by 11.00 inches
Scale:	100 %
(?)	Cancel OK

Available operations in [Page Attributes]

In [Page Attributes], you can configure basic settings about paper.

	Settings:	Page Attributes
	Format for:	Printer Name
	Paper Size:	PS 8 1/2x11
	Orientation:	8.50 by 11.00 inches
	Scale:	100 %
?		Cancel OK

Settings	Description
[Paper Size:]	Select the size of paper for printing. To print on custom sized paper, use [Manage Custom Sizes]. For details, refer to page 3-11.
[Orientation:]	Specify the orientation of the original created in application software. If the setting in the printer driver differs from the one specified in the appli- cation software, correct the setting.
[Scale:]	Specify the zoom ratio to enlarge or reduce the original image. The setting range differs depending on the Mac OS X version.

3-68

Tips

- [12 × 18] in [Paper Size:] is equivalent to 304.8 × 457.2 mm that is slightly larger than A3.
- When you want to print on the entire paper of the standard size, select "W" for each standard size in [Paper Size:]. The original is printed at the center of paper larger than the original. For example, if you want to center and print 8-1/2 × 11 size data on 11 × 17 sized paper, create data with the "8-1/2 × 11W" size, and then, using the printer driver, set [Paper Size:] to [8-1/2 × 11W] and specify the paper tray to be used as [Paper Tray]. On this machine, load 11 × 17 size paper into the tray to use, and check the paper size as follows. Select the tray in [Paper] for the copy mode. Select [Change Tray Settings] [Wide Paper], specify [8-1/2 × 11W] and make sure that the [Paper Size] is set to [Auto Detect] and 11 × 17 is displayed. If you have loaded the 12-1/4 × 18 papers, you must set the [Paper Size] to [12-1/4 × 18]. To print on custom sized paper, use the Bypass Tray. In [Change Tray Settings] [Wide Paper], select [8-1/2 × 11W], and enter the paper size to use in [Change Size].
- In Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, you can also configure [Paper Size] and [Orientation] in the Print window.

3.5.2 [Print] window of the printer driver

How to display the [Print] window

- 1 Open document data using the application software. From the [File] menu, select [Print].
- 2 Check that the desired printer is selected in [Printer:].

The [Copies & Pages] window appears.

Printer: Presets:		
Copies: Pages: Paper Size:	All From: 1 to: 1	Querker
Orientation:		•
🗌 Prin	t header and footer	
		Cancel Print

Items common to each window

This section describes the settings and buttons common to the [Print] window.

Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

3

	Printer: Printer Name 📦 🔺
	Presets: Standard
	Copies: 1 🗌 🗌 Collated
	Pages: All From: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size: 8 1/2x11
	Orientation:
	Output Method
	O Paper View O Detailed Information S 1/2x11 Collate
44 4 1 of 1 >>>>	© Offset 81/2x11
	Output Method:
	Print
	x 1 User Authentication
	Account Track
	Printer Information Detail Settings
	Default
(?) (PDF •)	Cancel

Mac OS X 10.4:

Printer:	Printer Name		•	
Presets:	Standard		•	
	Output Methe	bd	+	
 Paper View Detailed Informa 8 1/2×11 8 1/2×11 		Collate Offset		
	_	put Method: Print		•
• <i>• •</i> •		Jser Authenticat Account Track	tion	
Printer Informatio	n)	Detail	Settings	\supset
	P. 1			Default

Settings

[Paper View]

Description

Displays the sample page layout based on current settings for checking the print result image.

Settings	Description
[Detailed Information]	Displays the current settings in text.
[Printer Information]	Displays the installation option status. This button is enabled only when your computer can communicate with this machine.
[Default]	Reverts the settings to their default values.
[Cancel]	Discards (or cancels) the current changes and closes the setup window.
[Print]	Applies the changes made to the settings and starts printing.

3.5.3 Available operations in [Copies & Pages]

In [Copies & Pages], you can configure basic settings about printing, such as the number of copies and print range.

Printer:	Printer Name
Presets:	Standard
Copies:	1 Collated
	All From: 1 to: 1
Paper Size:	8 1/2x11 3.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:	
	TextEdit
🗌 Prin	t header and footer
	Presets: Copies: Pages: Paper Size: Orientation:

Settings	Description
[Copies:]	When printing multiple sets of copies, specify the number of sets.
[Collated:]	Do not specify this function. Specify this function in [Collate] in [Output Method].
[Pages:]	When printing a multi-page original, specify the range of pages to be printed.

Tips

- In Mac OS X 10.5, [Format for:] and [Orientation:] are also displayed, but the function is the same as that available from [Page Attributes].
- When the setting items are not displayed in Mac OS X 10.5, click 🔽 on the right side of [Printer:].

3.5.4 Available operations in [Output Method]

In [Output Method], you can configure settings for printing processes.

Outpu	ut Method
Paper View Detailed Information 8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11	Collate
	Output Method:
*1 • • • • • •	User Authentication Account Track Detail Settings
Printer Information	Default
	Cancel Print

Settings	Description
[Collate]	When printing multiple sets of copies, select this check box to output sets of copies one by one. When this check box is cleared, the first page of the original is printed on as many sheets as the number specified in [Copies:], then each of the subsequent pages is printed in this manner.
[Offset]	When printing multiple sets of copies, select this check box to output each set as a staggered layer.
[Output Method]	Select the method to use to print the original from this machine.
[Print]	Select this option to print normally.
[Secure Print]	Select this option to print highly confidential documents. Printing is al- lowed when the ID and password are entered on this machine. For details, refer to page 3-51.
[Save in User Box]	Select this option to save the original in a box on this machine. For details, refer to page 3-53.
[Save in User Box and Print]	Select this option to save the original in a box on this machine and print it at the same time. For details, refer to page 3-53.
[Proof Print]	Select this option to print a large number of copies. This machine prints only one copy and waits for the user's command before printing the re- maining copies. For details, refer to page 3-49.
[ID&Print]	Select this option to print highly confidential documents in an environment where user authentication is employed. Printing is allowed when the user is authenticated to use this machine. For details, refer to page 3-57.
[User Authentication]	Select this check box when user authentication is employed. In the window that appears, enter the user name and password. For details, refer to page 3-55.
[Account Track]	Select this check box when account track is employed. In the window that appears, enter the account name and password. For details, refer to page 3-55.
[Detail Settings]	Click this button to display the window for configuring the detail settings.
Clicking [Detail Settings...] displays the [Output Method:] functions for which detail settings can be specified. Selecting a function and clicking [Settings...] displays the window for specifying the detail settings for the selected function.

	Detail Settings	
ettings:	1	
Secure Print		
Save in User Box User Authentication		
Account Track		
Administrator Settings		
1		
Expand All	Collapse All	
	Jonapse An	
	Settings)
		ОК

Settings	Description
[Secure Print]	Enter the ID and password for Secure Print. For details, refer to page 3-51.
[Save in User Box]	Specify the user box to save the data. For details, refer to page 3-53.
[User Authentication]	When user authentication is employed, enter the user name and password. For details, refer to page 3-55.
[Account Track]	When account track is employed, enter the account name and password. For details, refer to page 3-55.
[Administrator Settings]	Select this option to display the window for changing the display settings of the User Authentication Settings window and changing the encryption pass-phrase.

Clicking [Administrator Settings] displays the window for changing the display settings of the User Authentication Settings window and changing the encryption passphrase.

	Administrator Settings
_	User Authentication/Account Track
	Popup Authentication Dialog when printing
	User Authentication
	Account Track
	Enhanced Server:
	Off
	Secure Print
	Popup Authentication Dialog when printing
	Print without Password
	• Allow
	○ Restrict
	Encryption Passphrase
	Encryption Passphrase:
	Cancel

Set	ttings	Description
	er Authentication/Ac- unt Track]	Specify the action to be taken when the User Authentication/Account Track function is used.
	[Popup Authentica- tion Dialog when printing]	Select this check box to display the [User Authentication] or [Account Track] dialog box when starting printing. This option reminds you to enter the user name or account name and the password.
	[Enhanced Server:]	Select whether to enable the enhanced server authentication.
[Se	cure Print]	Specify the action to be taken when the Secure Print function is used.
	[Popup Authentica- tion Dialog when printing]	Select this check box to display the [Secure Print] dialog box when starting printing. This option reminds you to enter the ID and password for Secure Print.
	[Print without Pass- word]	Select whether to allow users to print without entering the password.
[En	cryption Passphrase:]	Select this check box when you want to set your own encryption pass- phrase. The encryption passphrase is used for encrypting the authentication pass- word that is sent to this machine for executing printing. In normal circum- stances, the authentication password is encrypted using the encryption passphrase registered in advance in this machine. However, you can change the encryption passphrase when necessary. To change the encryption passphrase, change the setting in this machine, then, in the printer driver, enter the same encryption passphrase as that specified in this machine. For details on how to change the encryption passphrase, refer to page 3-65.

In [Layout / Finish], you can configure settings about the layout or finish of printing. You can combine pages or adjust print positions.

From the setting window, you can switch between the [Layout] window and the [Finish] window.



	Layout / Finish	
Paper View Detailed Information	Layout Finish	
8 1/2×11 ▼ 8 1/2×11	Off	
8 1/2×11	Punch:	
	Off	× v
	Fold & Staple:	\$
	Page Fold Setting:	
	x1 Off	Å
	Paper Arrangement:	
ि ि दि द	Prioritize Arranging Papers	•
Printer Information	Detail Settings	
	De	fault
	Cance	

Settings	Description
[Print Type:]	 Select the print sides of paper. [1-Sided]: The original is printed on one side of paper. [2-Sided]: The original is printed on both sides of paper. [Booklet]: The original is printed in booklet format. The pages in the original data are arranged, spread, and printed on both sides of sheets. When the printed sheets are stacked and folded in two, the pages are arranged in the correct order.
[Binding Position:]	Select the binding positions for stapling or punching the sheets.
[Poster Mode:]	The original image is enlarged, divided, and printed on multiple sheets. For example, when you select [2 × 2], one page of the original is divided and printed on four sheets. When you join the printed sheets together, a large poster is created. To create overlap margins, select the [Overlap width line] check box. Printing originals containing pages of different sizes or orientations in one job may cause images to be partially lost or overlapped.
[Rotate 180]	Select this check box to rotate the original 180 degrees and print it.

Settings	Description
[Image Shift]	 Select this check box to fine tune (shift) the print position of the image with respect to the paper. Selecting the [Image Shift] check box displays the [Image Shift] window. Specify the print position in detail. • [Front Side]: Specify the upward/downward and rightward/leftward shift distances for the front side. • [Back Side]: When you print on both sides, specify the upward/downward and rightward/leftward shift distances for the fort side. • [Back Side]: When you print on both sides, specify the upward/downward and rightward/leftward shift distances for the back side. Selecting the [Same value for Front and Back sides] check box applies the same settings to both sides.
[Chapters]	 When you have selected [2-Sided] or [Booklet] in [Print Type:], select this check box if you want to print particular pages on the front side. In [Page Number] in the [Chapters] window that appears when this check box is selected, specify the page numbers of the pages you want to print on the front side. To specify multiple page numbers, separate each number with a comma (for example, "2,4,6") or connect the numbers using a hyphen (for example, "6-10").
[Staple:]	Select this check box to staple the printed sheets. In addition, specify the number and positions of staples.
[Punch:]	Select this check box to make punch holes (binder holes) in the printed sheets. In addition, specify the number and positions of punch holes.
[Fold & Staple:]	When folding the printed sheets, select the folding mode.
[Page Fold Setting]	When you have selected [Half-Fold(By Sheet)] or [Tri-Fold(By Sheet)] in [Fold & Staple:], specify the number of pages to be folded at one time.
[Paper Arrangement:]	 Select whether to adjust the binding position on two-sided printed sheets collectively after all data items are received or sequentially each time a data item is received. [Prioritize Arranging Papers]: Paper arrangement is performed once after all data items are received. All pages are adjusted under the same conditions. [Prioritize Productivity]: Paper arrangement is performed sequentially while printing the pages.

Tips

- To use [Staple:], the optional Finisher is required.
- To use [Punch:], the optional Finisher and Punch Kit are required.
- The number of punched holes varies depending on the country you are in.
- To use Center Staple & Fold, Half-Fold, or Tri-Fold of [Fold & Staple:], the optional **Finisher** and **Saddle Kit** are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold & Staple:], the optional Finisher and Z-Fold Unit are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold & Staple:], specify the paper size described at the setting you selected from the drop-down list ([Z-Fold (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8K)], [Z-Fold (8 1/2 × 14)] at "Paper Size" of the application software or printer driver.

3.5.6 Available operations in [Paper Tray / Output Tray]

In [Paper Tray / Output Tray], you can specify the paper trays and type of paper used for printing.

(Paper Tray / Output Tray
Paper View Detailed Information 8/2X1 8/2X1	Paper Tray: Auto Paper Type: Plain Paper Paper Settings for Each Tray Output Tray: Default
Printer Information	x1 Carbon Copy Carbon Copy Settings Default
	Cancel Print

Settings	Description
[Paper Tray:]	Select the paper tray for the printing paper. When you select [Auto], the tray containing the paper selected in [Paper Size:] is automatically used.
[Paper Type:]	When you have selected [Auto] in [Paper Tray:], select the type of paper for printing. When you have selected anything other than [Auto], the paper type selected in [Paper Settings for Each Tray] is used.
[Paper Settings for Each Tray]	Specify the type of printing paper for each tray. Select [Paper Tray] and change [Paper Type:]. Ensure that the settings cor- respond correctly to the paper that has been loaded into the paper trays of this machine.
[Output Tray:]	Select the tray to which the printed sheets are output.
[Carbon Copy]	Select this check box to print the original on different sheets of paper loaded in multiple trays. Selecting the [Carbon Copy] check box displays the [Carbon Copy Settings] window. Specify the output order or trays used for carbon copying. For de- tails, refer to page 3-13.

Tips

- In [Paper Type:], specify [Side2] when printing on the back side of paper.
- In [Paper Type:], [User] specifies the paper type registered in this machine.

3.5.7 Available operations in [Cover Mode / Transparency Interleave]

In [Cover Mode / Transparency Interleave], you can insert covers into the printouts and insert OHP interleaves when printing on OHP transparencies.

From the setting window, you can switch between the [Cover Mode] window and the [Transparency Interleave] window.

Paper View	Cover Mode Transparency In	terleave
Detailed Information		terieave
1/2×11	Front Cover:	
3 1/2×11	Off	Å. V
	Off	* *
	Back Cover:	
	Off	Å
	Off	A T
×1	Front Cover from Post Inserter:	
3_	Off	A V
	Back Cover from Post Inserter:	
🖬 – 🎗 🖓	Off	Å
Printer Information		
	0	Cancel (
Cc	ver Mode / Transparency Int 🔹	Cancel)
Paper View		
Paper View Detailed Information	ver Mode / Transparency Int 😜 —	
Paper View	ver Mode / Transparency Int •	

8 1/2×11	Off	× *	
×1			
Printer Information			
		Default	
		Cancel Print	

Settings	Description
[Front Cover:]	 Select this check box to insert and print on a front cover. In addition, select the paper tray for the front cover and whether to print on the inserted front cover. [Blank]: Nothing is printed on the inserted front cover. [Print]: The first page of the original is printed on the inserted front cover. You can set this option when you have selected anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray].
[Back Cover:]	 Select this check box to insert and print on a back cover. In addition, select the paper tray for the back cover and whether to print on the inserted back cover. [Blank]: Nothing is printed on the inserted back cover. [Print]: The last page of the original is printed on the inserted back cover. You can set this option when you have selected anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray].
[Front Cover from Post In- serter:]	Select this check box to insert and print on an outer front cover. In addition, select the PI tray for the outer front cover. You can set this option when you have selected anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray].

Settings	Description
[Back Cover from Post In- serter:]	Select this check box to insert and print on an outer back cover. In addi- tion, select the PI tray for the outer back cover. You can set this option when you have selected anything other than [Auto] in [Paper Tray:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray].
[Transparency Interleave:]	When printing on multiple OHP transparencies, select this check box if you want to insert paper between the OHP transparencies. In addition, select the paper tray for the paper to be inserted. You can set this option when you have selected [Transparency] in [Paper Type:] in [Paper Tray / Output Tray].

Tips

- To use [Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter], the optional **Post Inserter** is required.
- [Front Cover:] and [Front Cover from Post Inserter:], or [Back Cover:] and [Back Cover from Post Inserter:] cannot be specified at the same time.

3.5.8 Available operations in [Per Page Setting]

In [Per Page Setting], you can change the print settings for each page. You can print pages using different types of paper loaded in the paper trays of this machine or change the layout or finish between pages.

Paper View Detailed Information	Per Page Setting
8 1/2x11 8 1/2x11	Per Page Setting:
	Add Delete Edit
Printer Information	
	Cancel Print

Settings	Description
[Per Page Setting:]	 Select this check box to insert sheets into the original or change the print settings page by page. In addition, select the list to apply to printing. Click [Add] to create in advance a list containing detailed print settings. For details on how to create a list, refer to page 3-40. Clicking [Delete] deletes the selected list. Clicking [Edit] displays the [Per Page Setting] dialog box where you can edit the selected list.

3.5.9 Available operations in [Stamp / Composition]

In [Stamp / Composition], you can embed a pattern that deters unauthorized copying and add the date and page numbers.

Stan	np / Composition
Paper View Detailed Information 81/2x11 V 81/2x11	Copy Security
	Date/Time
	Page Number Settings
Printer Information	Header/Footer Settings
	Default
	Cancel Print

Settings	Description
[Copy Security]	A pattern that deters unauthorized copying is composed on the original. Clicking [Settings] allows you to configure detailed settings of Copy Se- curity. For details, refer to page 3-29.
[Date/Time]	Select this check box to add the print date/time to the original. Clicking [Settings] allows you to change the print position and format of the text. For details, refer to page 3-26.
[Page Number]	Select this check box to add page numbers to the original. Clicking [Settings] allows you to change the print position and the page from which the printing starts. For details, refer to page 3-27.
[Header/Footer]	Select this check box to add the date and time and arbitrary text to the top or bottom margin (header/footer) of the original. Select the information to be added to the header/footer from those registered in this machine. Clicking [Settings] allows you to change the text color or the range of pages on which the header/footer is printed. For details, refer to page 3-28.

3.5.10 Available operations in [Quality]

In [Quality], you can configure settings for the image quality of the original. You can specify colors and image processing.

You can switch between the [Basic] and [Application] windows.

0.0	Quality
 Paper View Detailed Information 	Basic Application
ſ	Select Color:
	Auto Color 😫
	Color Settings:
	Document
	Document
	Quality Adjustment
	Resolution:
	600dpi
Printer Information	
Printer Information	
	Default
	(Cancel) Print

1		1
	Е	s

	Quality	
Paper View Optimize Detailed Information	Basic Application	
	Glossy Mode	
	Toner Save	
	Edge Enhancement	
	Auto Trapping	
	Black Over Print:	
Printer Information		
	Default	
	Cancel Print	

Settings	Description	
[Select Color:]	 Select colors for printing. [Auto Color]: The color mode is automatically selected according to the original color. [Full Color]: The original is printed in full color regardless of whether the original is in color or in black and white. [Gray Scale]: The original is printed in black and white regardless of whether the original is in color or in black and white. 	
[Color Settings:]	 Select the optimum color setting mode for the original. [Document]: The color setting suitable for originals containing multiple elements, such as text, graphs, figures, and photos, is applied. [Photo]: The color setting that prioritizes the image quality is applied. [DTP]: The color setting suitable for originals containing both text and figures is applied. What you see on the display is exactly reproduced. [Web]: The color setting suitable for printing Web pages is applied. Low-resolution images are reproduced with enhanced smoothness. [CAD]: The color setting suitable for originals composed of thin lines is applied. Images are reproduced in high resolutions. 	
[Quality Adjustment]	The image quality is fine tuned according to the original. For each element of the document, specify in detail the type of the color profile used for printing and other profiles to be applied. You can also manage ICC profiles. For details, refer to page 3-46.	
[Resolution]	Select the print resolution.	
[Glossy Mode]	Select this check box to print images with a glossy finish. The printing speed is reduced.	
[Toner Save]	Select this check box to save the amount of toner consumed. The printing density is reduced.	
[Edge Enhancement]	Select this check box to sharply print small or faint text. Sharpen the edges of images such as text in the table and graphics to improve legibility.	
[Auto Trapping]	Select this check box to prevent misalignment or generation of white space. Select this option to superimpose neighboring colors to print so as to prevent white space being generated around a picture.	
[Black Over Print:]	 Select this check box to prevent generation of white space around black characters or figures. Select this check box to superimpose black color on a neighboring color to print so as to prevent white space being generated around black characters or figures. [Text]: Only black characters are overprinted. [Text/Figure]: Figures and black characters are overprinted. 	

3.6 Deleting the printer driver

When you have to remove the printer driver, for example, when reinstallation of the printer driver is necessary, remove the driver using the following procedure.

- 1 Open the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center]) window.
 - → The [Print & Fax] window can be opened from [System Preferences...] in Apple menu (Mac OS X 10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6).
 - → The [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center] window can be opened from [Macintosh HD] [Applications]
 [Utilities] (Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4).
- 2 Select the printer you want to delete, and then click [-] (or [Delete]).

The selected printer is deleted.

- Close the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center]) window.
- 4 From [Library] [Printers] [PPDs] [Contents] [Resources] on [Macintosh HD] where the driver was installed (in Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, from [Resources] and in Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4, from [Resources] [en.lproj], [de.lproj], [es.lproj], [fr.lproj], [it.lproj], [ko.lproj], [ja.lproj], [zh_CN.lproj], and [zh_TW.lproj]), drag the following files to the [Trash] icon.
 - → [KONICAMINOLTAC754.gz]
 - → [KONICAMINOLTAC654.gz]
- 5 Delete unnecessary files from [Library] [Printers].
 - → Drag the [C754] folder, which is located in [Library] [Printers] [KONICAMINOLTA], to the [Trash] icon.
 - → In addition, if you are using Mac OS X 10.2, drag all the [KONICA MINOLTA C754] folders, which are located in [Library] [Printers] [PPDPlugins], to the [Trash] icon.
- 6 In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3/10.4/10.5, drag [bizhub C754_xxx.pkg], which is located in [Library] [Recipients], to the [Trash] icon.
- **7** Restart the computer.

This completes the deletion process of the printer driver.

3.7 Appendix: Using this machine with other connection methods

3.7.1 Using with an AppleTalk connection

Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

Configure the AppleTalk operating environment.

For details on how to configure the settings, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5

In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5, use the following procedure to add a printer with an AppleTalk connection:

- **1** Select [System Preferences] in the Apple menu.
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 The Ethernet setting window appears.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5, select [Ethernet], then click [Advanced...].
 - → In Mac OS X 10.4, select [Built-in Ethernet], then click [Configure...].
- 4 Double-click the [AppleTalk] tab to enable AppleTalk.
- 5 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.

→ When the [This service has unsaved changes] message appears, click [Apply]. Then, add the printer to the computer.

- 6 Select [System Preferences] in the Apple menu.
- 7 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.
- 8 Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.
- 9 Click [Default].

Connected printers are detected.

- → If no printers are detected, restart this machine.
- 10 From the [Printer Name] list, select the desired printer that is connected via AppleTalk.
 - → To check the printer name, select [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Network Settings] [AppleTalk Settings] on this machine.

The printer driver for the selected printer is displayed in [Print Using:].

- → When the printer driver is displayed, go to Step 12.
- → When the printer driver is not correctly displayed, go to Step 11.
- **11** Manually select the printer driver.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5, select [Select a driver to use...] in [Print Using:], then click the driver of the desired printer from the list.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.4, select [KONICA MINOLTA] in [Print Using:], and then click the driver of the desired printer from the list.
- 12 Click [Add].

This completes the addition process of the printer. Then, proceed to the [Installable Options] window to configure the optional environment for this machine. For details, refer to page 3-7.

In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3

3

In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3, use the following procedure to add a printer with an AppleTalk connection:

- 1 Select [System Preferences] in the Apple menu.
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 From [Show:], select [Built-in Ethernet].
- 4 Click the [AppleTalk] tab, and select the [Make AppleTalk Active] check box.
- 5 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.

→ When the [Apply configuration changes] message appears, click [Apply]. Then, add the printer to the computer.

- 6 From [Macintosh HD] [Applications] [Utilities], double-click [Printer Setup Utility] or [Print Center] to open it.
- 7 When the [You have no printers available.] window appears, click [Add]. When the printer list appears, click [Add].

→ If available printers have already been specified, the [You have no printers available.] window does not appear.

- 8 Select [AppleTalk] for the connection method, then select the zone to which the machine is connected. Connected printers are detected.
 - → If no printers are detected, restart this machine.
- 9 From the [Name] list, select the desired printer.
 - → To check the printer name, select [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Network Settings] [AppleTalk Settings] on this machine.
- **10** Manually select the printer driver.
 - → In [Printer Model:], select [KONICA MINOLTA], then click the driver of the desired printer from the model list.
- 11 Click [Add].

This completes the addition process of the printer. Then, proceed to the [Installable Options] window to configure the optional environment for this machine. For details, refer to page 3-7.

3.7.2 Using with an LPR connection

Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

Configure the LPR operating environment.

How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6, use the following procedure to add a printer with LPR connection:

- 1 Select [System Preferences...] in the Apple menu.
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 The Ethernet setting window appears.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, select [Ethernet], then click [Advanced...].
 - → In Mac OS X 10.4, select [Built-in Ethernet], then click [Configure...].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings of the network to which the computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.

→ When the [Apply configuration changes] message appears, click [Apply]. Then, add the printer to the computer.

- 7 Select [System Preferences...] in the Apple menu.
- 8 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.
- 9 Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.
- 10 Click [IP] or [IP Printer].
- 11 In [Protocol:], select [Line Printer Daemon LPD].
- 12 In [Address:], enter the IP address for the machine.

The printer driver for the machine specified with the IP address is displayed in [Print Using:].

- → When the printer driver is displayed, go to Step 14.
- \rightarrow When the printer driver is not correctly displayed, go to Step 13.
- 13 Manually select the printer driver.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.6, select [Select Printer Software...] from [Print Using:], then click the driver of the desired printer from the list that is displayed in another window.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5, select [Select a driver to use...] in [Print Using:], then click the driver of the desired printer from the list.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.4, select [KONICA MINOLTA] in [Print Using:], and then click the driver of the desired printer from the list.
- 14 Click [Add].

This completes the addition process of the printer. Then, proceed to the [Installable Options] window to configure the optional environment for this machine. For details, refer to page 3-7.

In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3

3

In Mac OS X 10.2/10.3, use the following procedure to add a printer with an LPR connection:

- **1** Select [System Preferences...] in the Apple menu.
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 From [Show], select [Built-in Ethernet].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Select the [Settings:] item and configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings for the network to which the computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.

→ When the [Apply configuration changes] message appears, click [Apply]. Then, add the printer to the computer.

- 7 From [Macintosh HD] [Applications] [Utilities], double-click [Printer Setup Utility] or [Print Center] to open it.
- 8 When the [You have no printers available.] window appears, click [Add]. When the printer list appears, click [Add].
 - → If available printers have already been specified, the [You have no printers available.] window does not appear.
- 9 Select [IP Printing] as the connection method.
- 10 In Mac OS X 10.3, select [LPD/LPR] in [Printer Type:].
- **11** In [Printer Address:], enter the IP address for the machine.
- 12 In [Printer Model:], select [KONICA MINOLTA], then click the driver of the desired printer from the model list.
- 13 Click [Add].

This completes the addition process of the printer. Then, proceed to the [Installable Options] window to configure the optional environment for this machine. For details, refer to page 3-7.

3.7.3 Using with an IPP connection

Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

Configure the IPP operating environment.

How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

In Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6, use the following procedure to add a printer with an IPP connection:

- 1 Select [System Preferences...] in the Apple menu.
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 The Ethernet setting window appears.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5/10.6, select [Ethernet], then click [Advanced...].
 - → In Mac OS X 10.4, select [Built-in Ethernet], then click [Configure...].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings of the network to which the computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.

→ When the [Apply configuration changes] message appears, click [Apply]. Then, add the printer to the computer.

- 7 Select [System Preferences...] in the Apple menu.
- 8 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.
- 9 Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window. [Printer Browser] appears.
- 10 Click [IP] or [IP Printer].
- 11 In [Protocol:], select [IPP (Internet Printing Protocol)].
- 12 In [Address:], enter the IP address for the machine. In [Queue:], enter "ipp".

The printer driver for the machine specified with the IP address is displayed in [Print Using:].

- → When the printer driver is displayed, go to Step 14.
- → When the printer driver is not correctly displayed, go to Step 13.
- 13 Manually select the printer driver.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.6, select [Select Printer Software...] from [Print Using:], then click the driver of the desired printer from the list that is displayed in another window.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.5, select [Select a driver to use...] in [Print Using:], then click the driver of the desired printer from the list.
 - → In Mac OS X 10.4, select [KONICA MINOLTA] in [Print Using:], and then click the driver of the desired printer from the list.
- 14 Click [Add].

This completes the addition process of the printer. Then, proceed to the [Installable Options] window to configure the optional environment for this machine. For details, refer to page 3-7.

In Mac OS X 10.3

3

In Mac OS X 10.3, use the following procedure to add a printer with IPP connection:

- **1** Select [System Preferences...] in the Apple menu.
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 From [Show], select [Built-in Ethernet].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Select the [Settings:] item and configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings for the network to which the computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.

→ When the [Apply configuration changes] message appears, click [Apply]. Then, add the printer to the computer.

- 7 From [Macintosh HD] (system hard disk) [Applications] [Utilities], double-click [Printer Setup Utility].
- 8 When the [You have no printers available.] window appears, click [Add]. When the printer list appears, click [Add].
 - → If available printers have already been specified, the [You have no printers available.] window does not appear.
- 9 Select [IP Printing] as the connection method.
- 10 In [Printer Type:], select [Internet Printing Protocol IPP].
- **11** In [Printer Address:], enter the IP address for the machine.
 - → Leave [Queue Name:] blank.
- 12 In [Printer Model:], select [KONICA MINOLTA], then click the driver of the desired printer from the model list.
- **13** Click [Add].

This completes the addition process of the printer. Then, proceed to the [Installable Options] window to configure the optional environment for this machine. For details, refer to page 3-7.

In Mac OS X 10.2

In Mac OS X 10.2, use the following procedure to add a printer with IPP connection:

- **1** Select [System Preferences...] in the Apple menu.
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 From [Show], select [Built-in Ethernet].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Select the [Settings:] item and configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings for the network to which the computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.

→ When the [Apply configuration changes] message appears, click [Apply]. Then, add the printer to the computer.

- 7 From [Macintosh HD] (system hard disk) [Applications] [Utilities], double-click [Print Center].
- 8 If the printer list appears, hold down the Option key and click [Add].

→ When the [You have no printers available.] window appears, click [Cancel].

- 9 From the Connection Methods list, select [Advanced].
- 10 Set the [Device:] to [Internet Printing Protocol (http)].
- **11** Enter the name of this machine in the [Device Name:].
- 12 Enter the IP address of this machine in the [Device URI:] in the format of "http://<IP address>/ipp".
- 13 In [Printer Model:], select [KONICA MINOLTA], then click the driver of the desired printer from the model list.
- 14 Click [Add].

This completes the addition process of the printer. Then, proceed to the [Installable Options] window to configure the optional environment for this machine. For details, refer to page 3-7.

3.8 Appendix: Printing in a Mac OS 9.2 environment

3.8.1 Before Setting Up the Computer (For Administrators)

Preparation flow

3

In order to use this machine via an AppleTalk connection, you need to take preparatory steps on this machine.

- 1 Connecting this machine to the network
 - \rightarrow Checking the LAN cable connection
- 2 Configuring the AppleTalk settings
 - → Enabling AppleTalk
 - → Setting a printer name

Enter the name of this machine to be displayed in Chooser.

3 Preparation finished.

Checking the LAN cable connection

Check that a LAN cable is connected to the LAN port of this machine.



Configuring the AppleTalk settings

Enable AppleTalk. In addition, enter the name of this machine to be displayed in Chooser.

How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

3.8.2 Setting up the computer

Setup flow

This section describes the setup flow for printing from your computer.

- 1 Preparing the printer driver
 - → Preparing the DVD-ROM
 - → Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver

Check that your computer meets the operating environment requirements of the printer driver.

2 Installing the printer driver to the computer

→ Installing the printer driver using the installer

Insert the DVD-ROM disk into the drive, and install the software by following the on-screen instructions. → Adding the printer

Add the printer automatically detected by AppleTalk to the computer.

3 Preparation finished.

Checking the operating systems supported by the printer driver

The following lists the printer drivers included on the DVD-ROM supplied with this machine and the supported operating systems.

Printer driver	Page descrip- tion language	Supported Operating Systems
PostScript PPD driver	PostScript 3 Em-	Mac OS 9.2 or later
(PS-PPD)	ulation	Mac OS X 10.2.8/10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6

Installing the printer driver

Copy the printer description (PPD) file to the computer.

- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Open the folder in the DVD-ROM that contains the desired printer driver.
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.
- 3 Select the PPD file [KONICAMINOLTAC754UVxxx.ppd], and copy it to [Macintosh HD] (system hard disk) [System Folder] [Extension] [Printer Descriptions] on the computer.

This completes the installation process of the printer driver.

Setting the connection via AppleTalk

Add the printer automatically detected by AppleTalk to the computer.

- 1 In Apple menu, select [Control Panels] [AppleTalk].
- 2 From [Connect via:], select [Ethernet].

3

3 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.

→ When the [Save changes to the current configuration?] message appears, click [Save]. Then, add the printer to the computer.

- 4 In Apple menu, select [Chooser].
- 5 Make sure that [AppleTalk] is set to [Active], then click the "LaserWriter" icon.
- 6 From the [Select a PostScript Printer:] list, click the desired model name, then click [Create].

The window for selecting a PostScript printer description (PPD) file appears.

- → To check the printer name, select [Utility] [Administrator Settings] [Network Settings] [AppleTalk Settings] on this machine.
- → If a different PPD file has already been selected, click [Setup...], then click [Select PPD...] in the window that is already displayed.
- 7 Click the applicable PPD file, and then click [Select] (or [Open]).

When the selected printer is registered in [Chooser], you have successfully added the printer.

- → If the window showing the installable options appears, proceed to change the option settings as necessary. Go to Step 8.
- → If the [Chooser] window appears, go to Step 9.
- 8 In the [Options Installed 1] and [Options Installed 2] windows, specify the options installed in this machine, and click [OK].

Current Printer Description File (PPD) Selected:
Options Installed 1
Paper Source Unit(LCT): LU-204 🗢
Finisher: FS-535
Post Inserter: PI-505 😫
Punch Z-Fold Unit: PK-521+ZU-606 (2/3-Hole)
Cancel OK

9 Close the [Chooser] window.

3.8.3 Configuring the default settings of the printer driver

Configuring the optional environment of this machine

When you use this machine for the first time, properly configure the printer driver so that it contains information such as the options installed in this machine.

- 1 In Apple menu, select [Chooser].
- 2 Select the printer name.
- 3 Click [Setup...].
- 4 Click [Configure].

The option setting window appears.

5 Specify the options installed in this machine, and click [OK].

Current Printer Description File (PPD) Selected: "UVx.x.x.ppd"
Options Installed 1 🔷
Paper Source Unit(LCT): LU-204 🗢
Finisher: FS-535 🗢
Post Inserter: PI-505 🗢
Punch Z-Fold Unit: PK-521+ZU-606 (2/3-Hole)
Cancel OK

6 Close the [Chooser] window.

Changing the default print settings

In the [Print] window of the printer driver, you can change the default print settings.

- 1 From the [File] menu, click [Print] to display the [Print] window of the printer driver.
- 2 Change the settings, and click [Save Settings].

8.7.3 Printer: Printer Name
Finishing Options 1
Offset: Off 🗢
Output Tray: Default 🗢
Binding Position: Left Bind 🗢
Print Type: 2-Sided
Combination: Off 🔶
Staple: Off 🔶
Punch: Off 🔶
Save Settings Cancel Print

Tips

• The settings in the [Page Setup] dialog box cannot be saved.

3.8.4 Printing procedure

- 1 Open document data using the application software. From the [File] menu, select [Print].
- 2 Check that the desired printer is selected in [Printer:].
 - → The [Print] dialog box varies depending on the application software.

Printer: Printer Name	◆ Destination: Printer ◆
General 🗢	
Copies: 1 🗹 Collated	
Pages: 🛞 All	
🔾 From: 🔤 To	:
Paper Source: 🖲 All pages from:	Auto Select 🔷
raper source. @ An pages nom.	
O First page from:	Tray1 🗢
Remaining from:	Tray1 🗢
Save Settings	Cancel Print

- 3 Specify the print range and the number of copies to print.
- 4 If necessary, switch the setting window and change the print settings.
 - → For details on the print settings, refer to page 3-94.
 - → The print settings you have changed here are reset to the defaults when you exit the application software.
- 5 Click [Print].

Printing is executed.

3.8.5 Setting items in the printer driver

Available operations in [Page Attributes]

In [Page Attributes] in the [Page Setup] (or [Paper Setup]) window, you can configure basic settings about paper.

LaserWriter 8 Page Setu	₽ 8.7.3
	Format for: Printer Name 🔶 Paper: 8 1/2x11 💠 Orientation: 🎼 <table-cell> Scale: 100 %</table-cell>
	Cancel OK

Settings	Description
[Paper:]	Select the size of paper for printing.
[Orientation:]	Specify the orientation of the original created in application software. If the setting in the printer driver differs from the one specified in the appli- cation software, correct the setting.
[Scale:]	Specify the zoom ratio to enlarge or reduce the original image.

Registering a custom paper size

To print on custom sized paper, select [Custom Page Sizes] in the [Page Setup] window, then register the paper size. The registered size can be selected from [Paper:] in [Page Attributes].

- 1 From the [File] menu, select [Page Setup] (or [Paper Setup]).
- 2 Select [Custom Page Size].
- 3 Click [Add].
- 4 Register the desired paper size, and click [OK].



Settings	Description
[Paper Size]	Enter the width and length as desired. In [Units:], change the unit of the values as necessary.
[Margins]	If necessary, set the top, bottom, right, and left margins of the paper. In [Units:], change the unit of the values as necessary.
[Custom Page Size Name]	Set a name for the paper size. Use a name that helps you easily identify the paper.

Available operations in [General]

In [General] in the [Print] window, you can configure basic settings about printing, such as the number of copies and print range.

Printer: Printer Name	♦ Destination: Printer ♦
General 🗢	
Copies: 📘 🗹 Collated	
Pages: @ All	
() From: To	
Paper Source: 🖲 All pages from:	Auto Select 🗧
G First page from:	Tray1 🖨
Remaining from:	Tray1 \$
Save Settings	Cancel Print

Settings	Description
[Copies:]	When printing multiple sets of copies, specify the number of sets.
[Collated]	When printing multiple sets of copies, select whether to consecutively print sets of copies.
[Pages:]	When printing a multi-page original, specify the range of pages to be print- ed.
[Paper Source:]	Select the paper tray and paper type used for printing.

Available operations in [Layout]

In [Layout] in the [Print] window, you can specify how the original pages are combined on sheets.

Printer: Printer Name	Destination: Prin	8.7.3 nter 🗢
Layout	•	
1	Pages per sheet: 1 Layout direction: 12 21 Border: none	÷
Save Settings	Cancel	Print

Settings	Description
[Pages per sheet:]	Multiple pages can be reduced and printed on the same side of a single sheet of paper.
[Layout direction]	Select the page layout order.
[Border:]	When you want to draw border lines between pages, select the border line type.

Available Operations with printer-specific functions (Finishing Options 1 to 6)

In [Finishing Option 1] to [Finishing Option 6] in the [Print] window, you can configure the printer-specific functions. These options can be specified when functions of the machine such as stapling and punching are to be used.

Printer: Printer Name	8.7.3 Destination: Printer 😫
Finishing Options 1	
Offset: Off 🗢	
Output Tray: Default 🔶	
Binding Position: Left Bind 😫	
Print Type: 2-Sided 😫	
Combination: Off 🗧 🜩	
Staple: Off 🔶	
Punch: Off 🗢	
Save Settings	Cancel Print

Settings	Description
[Offset:]	When multiple sets of copies are printed, the sets are output in staggered layers.
[Output Tray:]	Select the tray to which the printed sheets are output.
[Binding Position:]	Select the binding positions for stapling or punching the sheets.
[Print Type:]	Set the print side of papers to [1-Sided] or [2-Sided].
[Combination:]	The original is printed in booklet format. The pages in the original data are arranged, spread, and printed on both sides of sheets. When the printed sheets are stacked and folded in two, the pages are arranged in the correct order.
[Staple:]	The printed sheets are stapled. Specify the number and positions of staples.

Settings	Description
[Punch:]	Punch holes (binder holes) are made in the printed sheets. Specify the number and positions of punch holes.
[Fold:]	When folding the printed sheets, select the folding mode.
[Front Cover:]	A front cover is inserted and used for printing. In [Front Cover Tray:], select the paper tray for the front cover.
[Back Cover:]	A back cover is inserted and used for printing. In [Back Cover Tray:], select the paper tray for the back cover.
[Front Cover from Post In- serter:]	Select this check box to insert and print on an outer front cover. In addition select the PI tray for the outer front cover.
[Back Cover from Post In- serter:]	Select this check box to insert and print on an outer back cover. In addition, select the PI tray for the outer back cover.
[Transparency Interleave:]	When multiple OHP transparencies are printed, paper is inserted between the OHP transparencies. In [Interleave Tray:], select the paper tray for the paper to be inserted.
[Output Method:]	When printing a large number of copies, set [Proof Print]. This machine prints only one copy and waits for the user's command before printing the remaining copies.
[Resolution:]	Select the print resolution.
[Select Color:]	Select colors for printing.
[Glossy Mode:]	Images are printed with a glossy finish. The printing speed is reduced.
[Color Settings:]	Select the optimum color setting mode for the original.
[Auto Trapping:]	To prevent misalignment or generation of white space, neighboring colors are superimposed around a picture.
[Black Overprint:]	To prevent white space being generated around black characters or fig- ures, black is superimposed on neighboring colors.
[Color Matching (Text):]	Select this option to adjust the color quality of the text in the original.
[Pure Black (Text):]	Select whether to use (ON/OFF) the Pure Black function for the texts in the original.
[Screen (Text):]	Select whether to use screening for the texts in the original.
[Color Matching (Photo):]	Select this option to adjust the color quality of the photos in the original.
[Pure Black (Photo):]	Select whether to use (ON/OFF) the Pure Black function for the photos in the original.
[Screen (Photo):]	Select whether to use screening for the photos in the original.
[Smoothing (Photo):]	Select whether to use smoothing for the photos in the original.
[Color Matching (Graphic):]	Select this option to adjust the color quality of the figures, tables, or graphs in the original.
[Pure Black (Graphic):]	Select whether to use (ON/OFF) the Pure Black function for the figures, ta bles, or graphs in the original.
[Screen (Graphic):]	Select whether to use screening for the figures, tables, or graphs in the original.
[Smoothing (Graphic):]	Select whether to use smoothing for the figures, table, or graphs in the original.
[Toner Save:]	Select this check box to reduce the printing density in order to save the amount of toner consumed.
[Edge Enhancement:]	Sharpen the edges of images such as text in the table and graphics to im prove legibility.

Tips

- To use [Staple:], the optional **Finisher** is required.
- To use [Punch:], the optional **Finisher** and **Punch Kit** are required.
- The number of punched holes varies depending on the country you are in.

- To use Center Staple & Fold, Half-Fold, or Tri-Fold of [Fold:], the optional **Finisher** and **Saddle Kit** are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold:], the optional **Finisher** and **Z-Fold Unit** are required.
- To use Z-Fold of [Fold], specify the paper size described at the setting you selected from the drop-down list ([Z-Fold (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8K)], [Z-Fold (8 1/2 × 14)] at "Paper Size" of the application software or printer driver.
- To use [Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter], the optional **Post Inserter** is required.
- [Front Cover:] and [Front Cover from Post Inserter:], or [Back Cover:] and [Back Cover from Post Inserter:] cannot be specified at the same time.



4 Printing in a NetWare Environment

4.1 Before using the printer

This machine supports the following NetWare environments:

NetWare version	Protocol used	Connection method
NetWare 4.x	IPX	Bindery Pserver Nprinter/Rprint- er
NetWare 5.x	IPX	NDS Pserver Nprinter/Rprinter
	TCP/IP	NDPS
NetWare 6.x	IPX	NDS Pserver
	TCP/IP	NDPS

Tips

• For details on the NetWare functions, refer to the NetWare manual.

4.2 Operations required to use this function (For administrators)

The installation method for the printer driver differs depending on the connection method in the NetWare environment. Before installing the printer driver, configure the NetWare print mode according to your environment.

How to configure the setting is explained using **Web Connection**. For details, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].

4.3 Installing the printer driver

For the Windows client that uses a printer, install the printer driver using the [Add Printer Wizard].

- ✓ Administrator authority is required for installation.
- 1 Insert the DVD-ROM for Windows into the DVD-ROM drive of the computer.
- 2 Open the [Printers] window, [Printers and Faxes] window, or [Devices and Printers] window.
- 3 Execute [Install printers/MFPs] or [Add Printer].

The [Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 4 In the port settings, browse the network and specify the name of the created queue (or NDPS printer name).
- 5 From the printer model list, specify the desired folder in the DVD-ROM that contains the printer driver.
 - → Select the folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Selectable printer drivers: Windows XP/Server 2003: PCL driver and PS driver Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2: PCL driver, PS driver, and XPS driver
- 6 Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the installation process.

bizhub C754/C654



5 Printing without Using the Printer Driver

5.1 Directly Printing from the PC (Direct Print)

Direct Print

The Direct Print function enables you to send PDF or TIFF files on your computer to this machine to print them without using the printer driver.

You can print a file stored on your computer by specifying it using Web Connection.



Related setting

• You can specify how the paper size is determined when TIFF or JPEG files are directly printed (Default: [Auto Paper Select]). For details, refer to page 6-8.

Direct Print procedure

Connect to **Web Connection** using a Web browser, then specify the file you want to print. You can print XPS, PDF, TIFF, PS, PCL, JPEG, Text, docx, xlsx, pptx, and PPML format files.

- 1 Access Web Connection using a Web browser.
 - → For information on how to access Web Connection, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].
- 2 Log in to the user mode.
 - → For details on how to login to the user mode, refer to [User's Guide: Web Management Tool].
- 3 Click [Direct Print].
- 4 Select the file you want to print, and click [OK].

→ Change the print settings as necessary. The file is sent and printed.

Reference

When you print a password-protected PDF file, the file is stored in the Password Encrypted PDF User Box. For details on how to print a file saved in the Password Encrypted PDF User Box, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].

Tips

• Application software programs that offer the same function as Direct Print of **Web Connection** through simpler operations include **Direct Print**. Features such as printing through drag-and-drop to the desktop icon, printing using the [Send To] menu in Windows, and automatic printing using a hot folder (print monitoring folder) are available. You can also register multiple job settings in which print settings are configured. The **Direct Print** is contained on the DVD supplied with this machine. For details, refer to the **Direct Print** manual.

F

5.2 Directly printing from a USB memory device

Printing from a USB memory device

By connecting a USB memory device to this machine and specifying a file stored in the USB memory device, you can print the file.



Supported USB memory devices

USB memory devices that have the following specifications can be connected to this machine.

Item	Requirement	
Interface	Compatible with USB Version 1.0/2.0 interface	
Format type	Formatted in FAT32	
Security	Encryption, password lock, or other security functions are not provided or such functions can be turned off.	
Memory size	 Up to 2 GB is recommended. Devices with a memory size of 4 GB or greater may not operate correctly. A USB memory device, which is recognized as multiple drives, cannot be used. 	

Note the following points when connecting a USB memory device to this machine.

- Use the USB connector on the side that is near the **Control Panel**. Do not use the USB connector near the rear side because it is used for optional devices.
- Do not disconnect the USB memory device while saving a file to the device or printing a file saved in the device.
- Use only a USB memory device on this machine. Do not use other USB devices (such as hard disk unit and USB switching hub).
- Do not connect or disconnect the USB memory when the hourglass is being displayed in the **Control Panel** while this machine is active.
- Do not disconnect the USB memory just after connecting it.

Printing procedure

Connect the USB memory device to this machine, and on the **Touch Panel**, specify the file you want to print. For details on the printing procedure, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].
5.3 Directly printing from a Bluetooth device

Printing from a Bluetooth device

By connecting a Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone, smartphone, tablet PC, or other terminal to this machine, you can print files saved in the terminal.



Tips

- The optional Local Interface Kit EK-607 is required to use the Bluetooth devices.
- The Bluetooth device interface must be configured by your service representative in advance. For details, contact your service representative.

Supported Bluetooth devices

Bluetooth devices that have the following specifications can be connected to this machine.

Item	Specifications
Communication protocol	Bluetooth Ver. 2.0 + EDR
Supporting profile	OPP/BPP/SPP
Supporting file type	 PDF/Compact PDF/XPS/Compact XPS/TIFF/JPEG/XHTML/Repli-Go/OpenXML (.docx/.xlsx/.pptx) For XHTML file types, the machine supports the character code of UTF-8/Shift-JIS/ISO-8859 and the link file extensions of JPEG/JPG/PNG. This machine supports RepliGo version 2.1.0.8.

Printing procedure

Connect a Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone, smartphone, tablet PC, or other terminal to this machine, then specify the file you want to print.

For details on the printing procedure, refer to [User's Guide: Box Operations].



6 Description of Setup Buttons (User Settings)

[Utility]

To display: [Utility]

Used to check the various settings and usage of this machine.

Settings	Description
[One-Touch/User Box Registration]	Register destinations or User Boxes.
[User Settings]	Press this button to enable users to change settings. You can change the defaults or screen displays of the copy, scan/fax, or print function in a user-friendly manner to suit your environment.
[Administrator Settings]	Press this button to display settings that can be configured only by the ad- ministrator. To configure settings, you need to enter the administrator password for this machine. You can specify the initial operations of the copy, print, fax, or User Box function, power saving function, and network function to suit your environ- ment. Also, you can manage the use status of this machine or inhibit an in- formation leakage by specifying the authentication or security function.
[Check Consumable Life]	Press this button to check the status of consumables (consumption level) in this machine. When necessary, print the status of consumables in list form.
[Banner Printing]	Press this button to select whether to permit banner printing of the print function.
[Device Information]	Press this button to display the function version or IP address (IPv4/IPv6) of this machine.
[Remote Panel Operation]	Press this button to control the Control Panel of this machine from a distant place.

[User Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings]

Press this button to enable users to change settings. You can change the defaults or screen displays of the copy, scan/fax, or print function in a user-friendly manner to suit your environment.

Settings	Description
[System Settings]	Configure the operating environment of this machine.
[Custom Display Settings]	Change the Touch Panel display to the convenience of the user.
[Copier Settings]	Configure settings for copy operations.
[Scan/Fax Settings]	Configure setting for fax and scan operations.
[Printer Settings]	Configure settings for printer operations.
[Change Password]	Change the password of the user who is logged in through user authenti- cation.
[Change E-Mail Address]	Change the E-mail address of the user who is logged in through user au- thentication.
[Register Authentication In- formation]	Register the biometric authentication information or IC card authentication information of the user who is logged in through user authentication.
[Synchronize User Auth. and Account Track]	When user authentication and account track are both employed, specify whether to synchronize user authentication and account track setting for the login user.
[Cellular Phone/PDA Set- ting]	Configure the settings for printing from a Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone, smartphone, tablet PC or others.

[Printer Settings]

6

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] Configure settings for printer operations.

Settings	Description
[Basic Settings]	Specify the default print settings for this machine.
[Paper Setting]	Specify the default values for the paper trays and paper size to be used.
[PCL Settings]	Specify the default values for PCL printing.
[PS Setting]	Specify the default values for PS printing.
[Security Settings]	Select whether to verify the digital signature when printing XPS/OOXML (docx, xlsx, pptx) files with a digital signature.
[OOXML Print Settings]	Specify the default value for OOXML print settings during direct printing.
[Layout - Combination]	Specify the default value for combination settings during direct printing.
[Print Reports]	A report on configuration information of this machine or a font list is print- ed.
[TIFF Image Paper Setting]	Specify paper settings for directly printing of TIFF or JPEG format files. The settings are applied when images are printed from a USB memory de- vice or Bluetooth-compatible device or directly printed using the Direct Print function of Web Connection .

[Basic Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [Basic Settings]

Specify the default print settings for this machine.

This machine operates according to these settings unless the printer driver specifies the print settings.

Settings	Description
[PDL Setting]	Select the Page Description Language. When you select [Auto], this ma- chine automatically switches between PCL and PS. [Auto] is specified by default.
[Number of Copies]	Enter the number of copies to be printed. [1] is selected by default.
[Original Direction]	Select the orientation of the image to be printed. [Portrait] is selected by default.
[Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP]	Select whether to save the next print job on the hard disk if the job is re- ceived while another print job is being executed. [ON] is specified by default.
[A4/A3 ← →LTR/LGR Auto Switch]	If papers you have set by [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [Paper Setting] - [Paper Size] are not loaded into the paper tray, you can specify whether or not to print on paper of a similar size. In normal circumstances, select [OFF]. When you select [ON], size conversion between A4 and Letter and between A3 and Ledger automatically occurs and images may be partially lost. [OFF] is specified by default.
[Banner Sheet Setting]	Select whether to print the banner page (cover page) showing the sender or title of the print data. [OFF] is specified by default.
[Binding Direction Adjust- ment]	 Select how the binding position is adjusted on two-sided printed sheets. [Finishing Priority]: After all pages are received, the binding position is adjusted and printing begins. [Productivity Priority]: Each time a page is received, the binding position is adjusted and printing begins. [Control Adjustments]: The printing position is not adjusted. The pages are printed according to the settings specified in the printer driver. [Finishing Priority] is specified by default.

Settings	Description
[Line Width Adjustment]	 Select how the width of text or lines is adjusted. [Thin]: Select this option to draw letters and lines thinly. Details of letters and figures are elaborately printed. [Normal]: Select this option to draw letters and lines with a normal thickness. [Thick]: Select this option to draw letters and lines thickly. Letters and figures are printed clearly. [Thin] is selected by default.
[Gray Background Text Correction]	Select whether to prevent text or lines on a gray background from looking thicker than they actually are. [ON]: Select this option to make the text and lines on a gray background look to have the same width as the text and lines on a non-gray back-ground. [ON] is specified by default.
[Minimal Print]	Select whether to directly print PDF, PPML, OOXML (docx, xlsx, pptx) files by reducing their entire page a little or not. This function is available when printing the entire original image, including its edges. [OFF] is specified by default.
[OOXML Print Mode]	Select whether to directly print OOXML (docx, xlsx, pptx) files with the pri- ority of quality or with the priority of speed. [Prioritize Speed] is selected by default.
[Fold Type Settings]	Select whether to fold the printed sheets. When you want to fold the print- ed sheets, select the folding mode. [No] is specified by default.
[Half-Fold/Tri-Fold Specifi- cation Settings]	Select the unit by which the paper is folded from [By Copy Job (Multiple Sheets)], [1 Unit], and [By Page]. When you select [By Page], enter the number of pages to be folded at one time. [By Copy Job (Multiple Sheets)] is selected by default.

[Paper Setting]

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [Paper Setting]

Specify the default values for the paper trays and paper size to be used.

This machine operates according to these settings unless the printer driver specifies the paper trays or paper size.

Settings	Description
[Paper Tray]	Select the paper tray for the printing paper. [Auto] is specified by default.
[Paper Size]	Select the size of paper for printing. The default values vary depending on the country you are in.
[2-Sided Print]	Select whether to print an original on both sides of paper when data con- taining multiple pages is printed. [OFF] is specified by default.
[Binding Position]	Select the binding position for 2-sided printing. [Left Bind] is selected by default.
[Staple]	Select whether to staple printed sheets. To staple printed sheets, select the number of staples. [OFF] is specified by default.
[Punch]	Select whether to punch printed sheets. To punch printed sheets, select the number of punched holes. [OFF] is specified by default.
[Banner Sheet Paper Tray]	Select the paper tray for printing the banner page (cover). [Auto] is specified by default.

[PCL Settings]

6

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [PCL Settings]

Specify the default values for PCL printing.

This machine operates according to these settings unless the printer driver specifies the print settings.

Settings	Description
[Font Settings]	 Select Resident Font or Download Font to specify the font to be used. [Resident Font]: Select a font from those installed in this machine. [Download Font]: Select a font from those downloaded to this machine. This option is displayed when a download font exists. In [Current Font], you can view the current setting. [Courier] is selected by default.
[Symbol Set]	Select the font symbol set to be used. The default values vary depending on the country you are in.
[Font Size]	 Specify the default font size value. [Scalable Font]: Enter the font size (in points) for scalable fonts (where different letters have different widths). [12.00 point] is specified by default. [Bitmap Font]: Enter the font width (in pitches) for bitmap fonts (where all letters have the same width). [10.00 pitch] is specified by default.
[Line/Page]	Enter the number of lines of text data to be printed on one page. The default values vary depending on the country you are in.
[CR/LF Mapping]	Select whether to replace the line feed codes when printing text data. When you want to replace the line feed codes, select the replacement method. [No] is specified by default.

[PS Setting]

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [PS Setting]

Specify the default values for PS printing.

This machine operates according to these settings unless the printer driver specifies the print settings.

Settings	Description
[Print PS Errors]	Select whether to print error information when an error occurs during PS rasterization. [OFF] is specified by default.
[ICC Profile Settings]	Specify the default profile setting to be displayed in the printer driver.
[Auto Trapping]	Select whether to superimpose neighboring colors to print so as to prevent white space being generated around a picture. Selecting [ON] prevents the generation of white lines at the boundaries of colors in graphs or figures. [OFF] is specified by default.
[Black Overprint]	 Select whether to print so as to prevent white space being generated around a black character or figure. [Text/Figure]: Adjacent portion between a text and figure is overprinted with black. Use this setting when a white line appears around the black portion in a graph or figure. [Text]: Black is overprinted on the adjacent colors in the text portion. Use this setting when a white line appears around the text. [OFF]: The data is printed as is without overprinting with black.

[Security Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [Security Settings]

Select whether to verify the digital signature when printing XPS/OOXML (docx, xlsx, pptx) files with a digital signature.

Settings	Description
[Verify XPS/OOXML Digital Signature]	Select whether to verify the digital signature when printing XPS/OOXML (docx, xlsx, pptx) files with a digital signature or not. When [ON] is selected, the data is not printed if the signature is invalid. [OFF] is specified by default.

[OOXML Print Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [OOXML Print Settings]

Specify the default value for OOXML print settings during direct printing.

Settings	Description
[Sheet/Book Print]	Select whether to directly print the currently selected sheet or the entire book during Excel file printing. The [Current Sheet] is selected by default.
[Paper Size]	Select a paper size to print OOXML (docx, xlsx, or pptx) files. [Auto] is specified by default.
[Paper Type]	Select a paper type to print OOXML (docx, xlsx, or pptx) files. [Auto] is specified by default.

[Layout - Combination]

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [Layout - Combination]

Specify the default value for combination settings during direct printing.

Settings	Description
[Yes]/[No]	Select whether to reduce and print multiple pages on the same side of a single sheet of paper. [No] is specified by default.
[Row]	Enter a number of pages to be placed in horizontal direction. [1] is specified by default.
[Column]	Enter a number of pages to be placed in vertical direction. [1] is specified by default.
[Combination Method]	Select a page direction. [Horizontal] is specified by default.
[Combination Direction]	Select a direction of page layout. [Top Left to Bottom Right] is specified by default.
[Layout Settings]	 Set the layout in details. [Page Spacing]: Set a page space in line and column directions. The default is [0] inches (0 mm). [Margin]: Set a page margin at the top, bottom, right and left positions. The default is [0] inches (0 mm). [Page Zoom]: Set any scale to enlarge or reduce the page size. [Auto] is specified by default. [Page Frame]: Select to print a border line between pages. [Do Not Print] is specified by default.

[Print Reports]

6

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [Print Reports]

A report on configuration information of this machine or a font list is printed.

Settings	Description
[Configuration Page]	A list of settings in this machine is printed. Change print settings as required, then tap [Start] to start printing.
[Demo Page]	A test page is printed. Change print settings as required, then tap [Start] to start printing.
[PCL Font List]	A list of PCL fonts installed in this machine is printed. Change print settings as required, then tap [Start] to start printing.
[PS Font List]	A list of PS fonts installed in this machine is printed. Change print settings as required, then tap [Start] to start printing.

[TIFF Image Paper Setting]

To display: [Utility] - [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [TIFF Image Paper Setting]

Specify paper settings for directly printing of TIFF or JPEG format files.

The settings are applied when images are printed from a USB memory device or Bluetooth-compatible device or directly printed using the Direct Print function of **Web Connection**.

Settings	Description
[Paper Selection]	 Select how the paper size used for printing is determined. [Auto Paper Select]: TIFF/JPEG (JFIF) images are printed on paper of the same size as the image. However, JPEG (EXIF) images are enlarged or reduced to the paper size specified in [User Settings] - [Printer Settings] - [Paper Size] before they are printed. [Priority Paper Size]: Images are enlarged or reduced to the paper size specified in [User Settings] before they are printed. [Priority Paper Size]: Images are enlarged or reduced to the paper size specified in [User Settings] before they are printed. When they are printed from a Bluetooth device, the paper size specified in [User Settings] - [Cellular Phone/PDA Setting] - [Print] - [Paper] is used. When they are printed from Web Connection or a USB memory device, the paper size specified in [User Settings] - [Paper] is used. [Auto Paper Select] is specified by default.

[Banner Printing]

To display: [Utility] - [Banner Printing]

Select whether to permit banner printing of the print function.

Select [Allow], and after the screen waiting for a banner printing job appears, execute printing from the computer.

[Restrict] is specified by default.

Description of Setup Buttons (Administrator Settings)

Description of Setup Buttons (Administrator Set-7 tings)

[Administrator Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings]

Press this button to display settings that can be configured only by the administrator. To configure settings, you need to enter the administrator password for this machine.

You can specify the initial operations of the copy, print, fax, or User Box function, power saving function, and network function to suit your environment. Also, you can manage the use status of this machine or inhibit an information leakage by specifying the authentication or security function.

For the administrator password, refer to the booklet manual [Quick Assist Guide].		
Settings	Description	

ootango	Becchpitch
[System Settings]	Configure the operating environment of this machine such as the date and time of this machine, power saving function, functional operations, and screen displays.
[Administrator/Machine Settings]	Register information on the administrator and this machine.
[One-Touch/User Box Registration]	Register destinations or User Boxes. Also, print an address list, or specify the maximum number of User Boxes that can be created.
[User Authentication/Ac- count Track]	Configure user authentication and account track. This function allows you to restrict users who can use this machine or man- age the use status of this machine. Specify the authentication method, or register user information or account track information.
[Network Settings]	Configure the network function such as TCP/IP settings or Scan-to-Send function operating environment.
[Copier Settings]	Configure each function used in the copy mode.
[Printer Settings]	Specify the time-out time to limit a communication between this machine and a computer, or configure settings of a communication with the printer driver.
[Fax Settings]	Configure the settings to use the fax or network fax function.
[System Connection]	Configure settings to establish the association of this machine and other system.
[Security Settings]	Configure the security function of this machine such as password setting or data management method.
[License Settings]	Issue a request code required to use an advanced function, or enable an advanced function.
[OpenAPI Certification Management Setting]	Specify a restriction code to prevent an OpenAPI connection application from being registered in this machine.
[Remote Access Setting]	Specify whether to remotely import or export user data such as address in- formation using the remote diagnosis system.

[System Settings]

7

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings]

Configure the operating environment of this machine such as the date and time of this machine, power saving function, functional operations, and screen displays.

Settings	Description
[Power Supply/Power Save Settings]	Configure the settings on how to use the Power key and the machine action in the power save mode.
[Output Settings]	Configure the output settings of this machine, such as the print setting of print and received fax data, and changing of primary output tray.
[Date/Time Settings]	Specify the current date and time and time zone of this machine.
[Daylight Saving Time]	Select whether to apply daylight saving time settings. To apply the daylight saving time, specify the daylight saving time, and the start and end dates.
[Weekly Timer Settings]	Select whether to automatically switch between power save and normal mode using the weekly timer. To use the weekly timer, specify the schedule for switching between power save and normal modes. Optionally, you can use a learning function that automatically sets a schedule to fit your office usage.
[Restrict User Access]	You can restrict change and delete operations for each user. Also, you can delete registered copy programs.
[Expert Adjustment]	Specify this setting if the color tone of print image, staple, hole-punch, and folding positions are changed. You can adjust various settings such as correction of printed image, staple, hole-punch, and folding positions.
[List/Counter]	Print the list that includes the machine settings and manage the counter.
[Reset Settings]	Select whether to reset the functions and settings which are currently dis- played when this machine has not been operated for a certain period of time.
[User Box Settings]	Specify the user box settings, such as deletion of unnecessary user boxes and files, and the time until the file saved in each user box is automatically deleted.
[Standard Size Setting]	Specify the detection capability setting of original size in the Original Glass and the Foolscap paper size setting.
[Stamp Settings]	Register header/footer programs and specify the stamp setting when sending a fax.
[Blank Page Print Settings]	Select whether to print date/time and stamp on blank pages inserted by the cover seat and inter sheet functions.
[Registered Key Settings]	Change the function to be assigned to Register Key 1 to Register Key 3 in the Control Panel .
[Job Priority Operation Set- tings]	Specify the printing priority order and whether to skip a job when you can- not perform a printing job immediately.
[Default Bypass Paper Type Setting]	Specify the default paper type used in the Bypass Tray .
[Page Number Print Posi- tion]	Select the printing position in the back side of paper relative to the printing position of the page number in the front side for printing on both sides and when specifying both of the booklet format and page number printing at a time.
[Preview Settings]	Specify the preview function settings, such as the display mode of preview images that appear when Preview is pressed on the Control Panel .
[Enlarge Display Settings]	Select whether to use Enlarge Display mode as the initial display of the Touch Panel . Also, select whether to inherit the settings configured in the normal screen display when switching the screen from Normal to Enlarge Display
[Scan File Name Settings]	Press this button to change the default file name of scanned original data when saving it.
[Set Paper Name by User]	Select whether to use custom paper with which a given paper name and type have been registered. To use custom paper, register paper name and type to be assigned to it.

Settings	Description
[Custom Display Settings]	Change the view of the main screen for the main menu and each mode in a user-friendly manner.

[Output Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [Output Settings]

Configure the output settings of this machine, such as the print setting of print and received fax data, and changing of primary output tray.

Settings	Description
[Print/Fax Output Settings]	Select when to start printing received print/fax data.
[Output Tray Settings]	Select the tray to which paper is ejected first in Copy, Print, Fax, or Print Report. This item is available when the optional Finisher is installed.
[Shift Output Each Job]	Select whether to shift paper for each job before ejection. This item is available when the optional Finisher is installed.

[Print/Fax Output Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [Output Settings] - [Print/Fax Output Settings]

Select when to start printing received print/fax data.

Settings	Description
[Print]	 Select when to start printing received print data. [Batch Print]: Printing is started after all pages are received. [Page Print]: Printing is started as the first page is received. [Page Print] is specified by default.
[Fax]	 Select when to start printing received fax data. [Batch Print]: Printing is started after all pages are received. [Page Print]: Printing is started as the first page is received. For Internet Fax, Batch Print is always selected. [Batch Print] is specified by default.

[Output Tray Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [Output Settings] - [Output Tray Settings] Select the tray to which paper is ejected first in Copy, Print, Fax, or Print Report.

Different default values are available for different options installed on this machine.

Tips

• This item is available when the optional **Finisher** is installed.

[Shift Output Each Job]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [Output Settings] - [Shift Output Each Job] Select whether to shift paper for each job before ejection.

[Yes] is specified by default.

Tips

• This item is available when the optional **Finisher** is installed.

[User Box Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [User Box Settings]

Specify the user box settings, such as deletion of unnecessary user boxes and files, and the time until the file saved in each user box is automatically deleted.

Settings	Description
[Delete Unused User Box]	A User Box in which no files are saved is recognized as an unnecessary User Box and deleted.
[Delete Secure Print Docu- ments]	All files saved in the Secure Print User Box are deleted.
[Auto Delete Secure Docu- ment]	Specify the time to automatically delete files in the Secure Print User Box, from the date/time the files were saved.
[Encrypted PDF Delete Time]	Specify the time to automatically delete files in the Password Encrypted PDF User Box, from the date/time the files were saved.
[ID & Print Delete Time]	Specify the time to automatically delete documents in the ID & Print User BOX, from the date/time the document was saved or the date/time they were last printed.
[Document Hold Setting]	Specify whether to keep the file in the Public User Box, Personal User Box, Group User Box, or Annotation User Box after it is printed or sent.
[External Memory Function Settings]	Specify whether to allow users to print and read files from a USB memory device and to save files to a USB memory device.
[Allow/Restrict User Box]	You can enable or disable each user to create, edit, and delete a user box.
[ID & Print Delete after Print Setting]	Select whether to ask the user if they want to delete the file from the ID & Print User Box after it is printed or to always delete the file without making confirmation.
[Document Delete Time Setting]	For all the Public User Boxes, Personal User Boxes, and Group User Box- es, the administrator specifies the time to automatically delete files from the date/time the files were last printed or sent.

[Delete Secure Print Documents]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [User Box Settings] - [Delete Secure Print Documents]

All files saved in the Secure Print User Box are deleted.

To delete the files, select [Yes] and tap [OK].

[Auto Delete Secure Document]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [User Box Settings] - [Auto Delete Secure Document]

Specify the time to automatically delete files in the Secure Print User Box, from the date/time the files were saved.

- When specifying the time in units of days, select [1 day], [2 days], [3 days], [7 days], or [30 days].
- When specifying the time, tap [Time] and enter a value between five minutes and 12 hours (in increments of one minute).
- To keep the files in the box, select [Save].

[1 day] is selected by default.



[ID & Print Delete Time]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [User Box Settings] - [ID & Print Delete Time]

Specify the time to automatically delete documents in the ID & Print User BOX, from the date/time the document was saved or the date/time they were last printed.

- When specifying the time in units of days, select [1 day], [2 days], [3 days], [7 days], or [30 days].
- When specifying the time, tap [Time] and enter a value between five minutes and 12 hours (in increments of one minute).
- To keep the files in the box, select [Save].

[1 day] is selected by default.

Related setting (for the administrator)

• You can let the user select whether to delete the file from the ID & Print User Box after the file is printed. For details, refer to page 7-7.

[ID & Print Delete after Print Setting]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [User Box Settings] - [ID & Print Delete after Print Setting]

Select whether to ask the user if they want to delete the file from the ID & Print User Box after it is printed or to always delete the file without making confirmation.

[Confirm with User] is selected by default.

[Stamp Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [Stamp Settings]

Register header/footer programs and specify the stamp setting when sending a fax.

Settings	Description
[Header/Footer Settings]	You can register header/footer programs, and change or delete registered programs.
[Fax TX Settings]	Select whether to cancel stamp setting when sending a fax.

[Header/Footer Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Settings] - [Stamp Settings] - [Header/Footer Settings] - [New]

You can register header/footer programs, and change or delete registered programs.

Settings	Description
[Name]	Enter the name of header/footer program (using up to 16 characters). When selecting a header or footer, give it a name that helps you easily identify it.
[Header Settings]	 Select whether to print a header. To print it, specify what to print. [Text]: Characters you entered are printed. [Date/Time]: Select whether to print date and time. To print it, select the appropriate display format. [Other]: Select whether to print information, such as job number, machine's serial number, and distribution control number. [Do Not Print] is specified by default.
[Footer Settings]	 Select whether to print a footer. To print it, specify what to print. [Text]: Characters you entered are printed. [Date/Time]: Select whether to print date and time. To print it, select the appropriate display format. [Other]: Select whether to print information, such as job number, machine's serial number, and distribution control number. [Do Not Print] is specified by default.
[Pages]	Select to print the header/footer on all pages or only on the first page. [All Pages] is selected by default.
[Text Details]	Select the size, font, and color of the text to be printed.

Tips

- To check or edit a header/footer program you registered, select it, then tap [Check/Edit].
- To delete a header/footer program you registered, select it, then tap [Delete].

[User Authentication/Account Track]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track]

Configure user authentication and account track.

This function allows you to restrict users who can use this machine or manage the use status of this machine. Specify the authentication method, or register user information or account track information.

Settings	Description
[General Settings]	Configure the methods of user authentication and account track authenti- cation and other settings for the authentication function of this machine.
[User Authentication Set- tings]	When employing user authentication, enter the user information. In addi- tion, configure function permission for each user and confirm the use sta- tus.
[Account Track Settings]	When employing account track, register the account information. In addi- tion, configure function permission for each account and confirm the use status.
[Print without Authentica- tion]	Select whether to allow users to start print jobs without authentication in- formation (jobs for which the print command is executed even though user authentication or account track is not correctly configured in the printer driver).
[Print Counter List]	A print counter list is printed.
[External Server Settings]	When employing external server authentication, register the authentication server. When registering multiple authentication servers, register the one you want to normally use as the default value.
[Limiting Access to Desti- nations]	Limit the access to destinations for each user.
[Authentication Device Set- tings]	When using an optional Authentication Unit , configure the authentication method and logout procedure.

Settings	Description
[User/Account Common Setting]	Configure settings common to user authentication and account track, such as the display of confirmation window at logout and the method of managing single-color/2-color printing.
[Scan to Home Settings]	Select whether to enable the Scan to Home function. This item can be configured when Active Directory is used as an authenti- cation server.
[Scan to Authorized Folder Settings]	Specify whether to limit transmission destinations. The authentication in- formation of the users who have logged in to this machine is used for ac- cessing a shared folder on the network.
[Print Simple Auth.]	Select whether to allow authentication that is based only on the user name (quick authentication for printing) when the printer driver is used for printing in an environment where user authentication is employed. When employing external server authentication, register the authentication server for quick authentication for printing.

[User Authentication Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track] - [User Authentication Settings]

When employing user authentication, enter the user information. In addition, configure function permission for each user and confirm the use status.

Settings	Description
[Administrative Settings]	Configure the display of the user name list, the function permission applied to external server authentication, and the ID & Print function.
[User Registration]	Register the user information. In addition, configure function permission and the upper limit of the number of printable sheets for each user.
[User Counter]	Use this option to check the number of pages for each user and to reset the counter.

[Administrative Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track] - [User Authentication Settings] - [Administrative Settings]

Configure the display of the user name list, the function permission applied to external server authentication, and the ID & Print function.

Settings	Description
[User Name List]	Select whether to display the [User Name List] icon in the login screen.
[Default Function Permis- sion]	Specify the default function permission applied to users when an external authentication server is used. Functions available to users who log in to this machine for the first time are limited according to the settings configured here.
[ID & Print Settings]	Specify the operations of the ID & Print function.
[ID & Print Operation Set- tings]	When using the Authentication Unit function on an optional authentica- tion unit, select whether to request user authentication for printing each job or to allow the user to print all jobs once the user is authenticated.
[Default Operation Selec- tion]	Select the default value for the operation that is performed after the au- thentication process is carried out in the login screen.

7

[User Name List]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track] - [User Authentication Settings] - [Administrative Settings] - [User Name List]

Select whether to display the [User Name List] icon in the login screen.

Selecting [ON] enables you to select the login user from the list of user names registered in this machine.

[OFF] is specified by default.

[Default Function Permission]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track] - [User Authentication Settings] - [Administrative Settings] - [Default Function Permission]

Specify the default function permission applied to users when an external authentication server is used.

Functions available to users who log in to this machine for the first time are limited according to the settings configured here.

[ID & Print Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track] - [User Authentication Settings] - [Administrative Settings] - [ID & Print Settings]

Specify the operations of the ID & Print function.

1

Settings	Description
[ID & Print]	 Select whether to handle jobs normally printed from the printer driver as ID & Print jobs. [ON]: Jobs that are normally printed are handled as ID & Print jobs. [OFF]: Only jobs for which ID & Print is set are handled as print jobs. [OFF] is selected by default.
[Public User]	 Select the process performed when a public user job or a job without user authentication information is received. [Print Immediately]: Prints the job without saving it in the ID & Print User Box. [Save]: Saves the job in the ID & Print User Box. [Print Immediately] is specified by default.

[ID & Print Operation Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track] - [User Authentication Settings] - [Administrative Settings] - [ID & Print Operation Settings]

When using the ID & Print function on an optional **Authentication Unit**, select whether to request user authentication for printing each job or to allow the user to print all jobs once the user is authenticated.

Settings	Description
[Print All Jobs]	One successful authentication session allows the user to print all jobs. [Print All Jobs] is specified by default.
[Print Each Job]	One successful authentication session allows the user to print a single job.

7

[Default Operation Selection]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track] - [User Authentication Settings] - [Administrative Settings] - [Default Operation Selection]

Select the default value for the operation that is performed after the authentication process is carried out in the login screen.

Settings	Description
[Print & Access Basic Screen]	The ID & Print job is executed and the user logs in this machine. [Print & Access Basic Screen] is specified by default.
[Access]	The user logs in to this machine. The ID & Print job is not executed.

[Print without Authentication]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [User Authentication/Account Track] - [Print without Authentication]

Select whether to allow users to start print jobs without authentication information (jobs for which the print command is executed even though user authentication or account track is not correctly configured in the printer driver).

Settings	Description
[Full Color/Black]	Both color printing and black-and-white printing are allowed. Print jobs are counted as public user jobs.
[Black Only]	Only black-and-white printing is allowed. Print jobs are counted as public user jobs.
[Restrict]	Printing is restricted. Canceling [Restrict] allows everybody to perform printing. Select [Restrict] to control user access and ensure security. [Restrict] is specified by default.

[Printer Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [Printer Settings]

Specify the time-out time to limit a communication between this machine and a computer, or configure settings of a communication with the printer driver.

Settings	Description
[USB Timeout]	When this machine is connected via USB to the computer, change the communication timeout time if necessary. [60 sec.] is specified by default.
[Network Timeout]	When this machine is connected via a network to the computer, change the communication timeout time if necessary. [60 sec.] is specified by default.
[Print XPS/OOXML Errors]	Select whether to print error information when an error occurs during XPS/OOXML (docx, xlsx, pptx) file printing. [Yes] is specified by default.
[Assign Account to Acquire Device Info]	Select whether to request the user to enter the password when the user obtains the information on this machine using a printer driver for Windows. If [Yes] is selected, enter the requested password (using up to eight char- acters). [No] is specified by default.

[System Connection]

7

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Connection]

Configure settings to establish the association of this machine and other system.

Settings	Description
[OpenAPI Settings]	To use application software that communicates with this machine via OpenAPI, configure the OpenAPI settings of this machine.
[Prefix/Suffix Automatic Setting]	When using a fax server that communicates in the E-mail format, select whether to automatically add a prefix and a suffix to the destination number.
[Printer Information]	Register the name, installation location, and other information on this ma- chine that are notified to the connected system.
[Cellular Phone/PDA Set- ting]	Select whether to allow users to print files from a Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone, smartphone, or tablet PC or to save files in a box.

[OpenAPI Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [System Connection] - [OpenAPI Settings]

To use application software that communicates with this machine via OpenAPI, configure the OpenAPI settings of this machine.

Settings	Description
[Access Setting]	Select whether to enable access via OpenAPI from application software. [Allow] is specified by default.
[SSL/Port Settings]	Configure the OpenAPI communication port and SSL communication set tings.
[SSL Setting]	 Select to use the SSL for communication or not. [Non-SSL Only]: Only non-SSL communication is allowed. [SSL Only]: Only SSL communication is allowed. [SSL/Non-SSL]: Both SSL communication and non-SSL communication are allowed. [Non-SSL Only] is specified by default.
[Port No.]	If necessary, change the OpenAPI communication port number. In normal circumstances, you can use the original port number. [50001] is specified by default.
[Port Number (SSL)]	If necessary, change the SSL communication port number. In normal circumstances, you can use the original port number. [50003] is specified by default.
[Client Certificate]	Select whether to request a certificate from clients that connect to this ma chine. To authenticate clients, select [Enable]. [Invalid] is selected by default.
[Certificate Verifica- tion Level Settings]	 To validate the certificate during SSL communication, select items to be verified. [Expiration Date]: Confirm whether the certificate is within the validity period. [Confirm] is selected by default. [Key Usage]: Confirm whether the certificate is used according to the intended purpose approved by the certificate issuer. [Do Not Confirm is selected by default. [Chain]: Confirm whether there is a problem in the certificate chain (certificate path). The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. [Do Not Confirm] is selected by default. [Expiration Date Confirmation]: Confirm whether the certificate has expired. [Do Not Confirm] is selected by default. [CN]: Confirm whether CN (Common Name) of the certificate matches the server address. [Do Not Confirm] is selected by default.
[Authentication]	Select whether to authenticate users accessing via OpenAPI. To authenticate, enter the login name and password in [Login Name] and [Password] [OFF] is selected by default.
[External Application Con- nection]	Select whether to connect to external application software via OpenAPI. [Yes] is specified by default.

[Security Settings]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [Security Settings]

Configure the security functions of this machine such as password setting or data management method.

Settings	Description
[Administrator Password]	If necessary, change the administrator password of this machine.
[User Box Administrator Setting]	If necessary, assign a user box administrator if the user authentication has been adopted into this machine. The user box administrator can create or delete a user box for all users as well as can use files in the boxes. If the administrator of this machine wishes to delegate only the manage- ment of files in the boxes to someone, assign a user box administrator.
[Administrator Security Levels]	From those items that are set up by the administrator, select levels at which users are authorized to change settings.
[Security Details]	Restricts functions that are related to authentication operations and data management to enhance security.
[Enhanced Security Mode]	Select whether to enable the Enhanced Security Mode. If you enable the Enhanced Security Mode, the various security functions are forcibly configured. This allows you to ensure higher-level security of data management. For details, contact your service representative.
[HDD Settings]	Manages the hard disk of this machine. Prevents the leakage of personal and corporate information by protecting data in the hard disk against eras- ure and protecting the hard disk with password and encryption.
[Function Management Settings]	Select whether to use network functions that are difficult to count.
[Stamp Settings]	Select whether to force application of stamps to original data when printing and sending a fax. It is also used to delete registered stamps.
[Driver Password Encryp- tion Setting]	Used to change the encryption passphrase to encrypt authentication pass- words (such as user and account passwords) when printing data using a printer driver. The same encryption passphrase must be set for the machine and the printer driver.
[FIPS Settings]	Select whether to enable the FIPS (Federal Information Processing Stand- ardization) Mode. FIPS defines security requirements for cryptographic modules. These standards are adopted by many organizations, including U.S. federal gov- ernment agencies. Enabling the FIPS Mode makes the functions of the ma- chine conforms to the FIPS.

[Security Details]

7

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [Security Settings] - [Security Details]

Restricts functions that are related to authentication operations and data management in order to enhance security.

Settings	Description
[Password Rules]	Configure whether to enable the password rules. Once you enable it, the number of characters and text types that are available for passwords are restricted. If necessary, change the minimum number of password characters.
[Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error]	Define the severity of penalties applied if a wrong password is entered in the authentication process.
[Confidential Document Access Method]	Specify how to enter an ID and a password when accessing to a file in the Secure Print User Box. This function is forced in conjunction with [Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error].
[Manual Destination Input]	Select whether to allow the user to directly enter destinations.
[Print Data Capture]	Select whether to allow capturing of printer data being received by this ma- chine when you start the analysis of printer-related failure.
[Job Log Settings]	Select whether to obtain a job log. After you have changed these settings, the job log is obtained when you restart this machine. The job log allows you to check usage, paper usage, operations and job history for each user or account. For details on viewing the output job logs, contact your service representative.
[Restrict Fax TX]	Select whether to restrict fax transmissions.
[Personal Data Security Settings]	Specify whether to hide personal information, such as destination and file name, in [In Progress] and [Log] on the [Job List] screen.
[Hide Personal Information (MIB)]	Specify whether to display the file name, destination, and User Box name and number of the MIB information.
[Display Activity Log]	Select whether to show the activity log on Scan, Fax TX and RX.
[Initialize]	Initializes the settings in [Job History], [Copy Program], [Network Settings], and [Address Registration]. Select items you want to initialize, then tap [OK].
[Job History Thumbnail Display]	Specify whether to show thumbnail images of job in [Log] on [Job List] screen.
[Secure Print Only]	Specify whether printing from the computer should be limited only to se- cure documents.
[Copy Guard]	Select whether to use Copy Guard. To use Copy Guard, optional Security Kit is required.
[Password Copy]	Select whether to use Password Copy. To use Password Copy, optional Security Kit is required.
[Web browser contents ac- cess]	Select whether to allow an access to the Web page contents being saved on the hard disk of this machine.
[TX Operation Log]	Select whether to obtain an operation log on the Control Panel when scanning or sending a fax as a send operation log. This helps to analyze any security issues that occur.

[Print Data Capture]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [Security Settings] - [Security Details] - [Print Data Capture] Select whether to allow capturing of printer data being received by this machine when you start the analysis

of printer-related failure. For details, contact your service representative.

[Allow] is specified by default.

[Secure Print Only]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [Security Settings] - [Security Details] - [Secure Print Only] Specify whether the printing from the computer should be limited only to the security document. When you select [Yes], you need to set Secure Print when printing from the printer driver. [No] is specified by default.

[Copy Guard]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [Security Settings] - [Security Details] - [Copy Guard] Select whether to use Copy Guard.

Copy Guard is a copy protection function that prints concealed security watermarks such as "Private" or a date in the background to prevent unauthorized copying, and embeds a copy restriction pattern on all printed sheets.

[No] is specified by default.

Tips

• To use Copy Guard, optional **Security Kit** is required.

[Password Copy]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [Security Settings] - [Security Details] - [Password Copy]

Select whether to use Password Copy.

Password Copy is a copy protection function that prints concealed security watermarks such as "Private" or a date in the background to prevent unauthorized copying, and embeds a password for the password copy function on all printed sheets.

[No] is specified by default.

Tips

• To use Password Copy, optional Security Kit is required.

[Driver Password Encryption Setting]

To display: [Utility] - [Administrator Settings] - [Security Settings] - [Driver Password Encryption Setting]

Used to change the encryption passphrase to encrypt authentication passwords (such as user and account passwords) when printing data using a printer driver.

The same encryption passphrase must be set for the machine and the printer driver.

Settings	Description
[User-Defined]	Select this option when you want to set your own encryption passphrase. Tap [Encryption Passphrase] and enter the encryption passphrase (up to 20 characters). Set the same encryption passphrase in the printer driver, too.
[Use Factory Default]	The encryption passphrase (a preset encryption key (common key) that is not exposed) set on this machine at the time of shipping is used. [Use Factory Default] is selected by default.

bizhub C754/C654



8 Index

8.1 Index by item

Numerics 2-Sided *2-30*, *3-17*

A

AppleTalk connection *3-83* Authentication information *2-79*, *3-55* Auto trapping *2-64*, *3-44*

В

Back cover 2-55, 3-36 Back cover from post inserter 2-56, 3-37 Banner paper 2-87 Banner printing 3-61 Basic tab 2-101 Before installing 2-3, 4-4 Before setting up 3-3, 3-90 Binding margin 2-32 Black over print 2-64, 3-44 Bluetooth device 5-5 Bonjour connection 3-3 Booklet 2-37, 3-22

С

Cable connection locations 1-5 Carbon copy 2-26, 3-13 Center staple and fold 2-34, 3-20 Collate 2-28, 3-16 Color settings 2-62, 3-42 Combination 2-29, 2-38 Configure tab 2-95 Convert to gray scale 2-67 Copies 2-27, 3-15 Copies & pages 3-71 Copy guard 2-51, 3-31 Copy protect 2-50, 3-29 Cover mode tab 2-105 Cover mode/transparency interleave 3-78 Custom page size 3-95

D

Date/time 2-47, 3-26 Default settings 2-8, 2-14, 3-7, 3-93 Direct print 5-3

E

Edge enhancement *2-65*, *3-45* Encryption passphrase *2-90*, *3-65* Excel *2-70*

F

Favorite setting 2-17 Finish tab 2-104 Fold 2-36, 3-21 Font settings 2-66 Front cover 2-55, 3-36 Front cover from post inserter 2-56, 3-37

G

General *3-95* Glossy mode *2-63*, *3-43*

H Header/footer 2-49, 3-28

ICC profile *3-46* ICC profiles *2-68* ID & print *2-82*, *3-57* Image compression *2-63* Image shift *2-40*, *3-25* Install *2-5*, *2-10*, *2-112*, *4-5* IPP connection *2-121*, *3-87* IPPS connection *2-121*

L

Layout *3-96* Layout tab *2-103* Layout/finish *3-75* LPR connection *2-113*, *3-85*

Μ

Mac OS *3-3* Mac OS 9.2 *3-90* My tab *2-18, 2-100*

Ν

NetWare *4-3* Network connection *2-3*

0

Offset 2-28, 3-16 Original size 2-22 Other tab 2-110 Output method 3-72 Output tray 2-37, 3-22 Overlay 2-43

Ρ

8

Page attributes 3-94 Page number 2-47, 3-27 Page setup 3-11 Page setup window 3-68 Paper size 2-20 Paper tray 2-24, 3-13 Paper tray/output tray 3-77 Paper type 2-23, 3-12 Password Copy 2-52, 3-33 Pattern 2-62 Per page setting 2-58, 3-40, 3-79 Port 9100 connection 2-113 Postcard 2-25 Poster mode 3-23 PowerPoint 2-71 PPD driver 2-93 Preparation for printing 2-3, 3-3 Presets 3-9 Preview 2-72 Print window 3-69 Printer functions 1-3 Printer-specific functions 3-96 Printing preferences window 2-98 Printing procedure 2-16, 3-8, 3-94 Proof print 2-73, 3-49 Properties window 2-94 Punch 2-35, 3-19

Q

Quality *3-80* Quality adjustment *2-61* Quality tab *2-108*

R

Rotate 180 2-39, 3-24

S

Save in user box 2-77, 3-53 Scale 3-10 Secure print 2-75, 3-51 Select color 2-60, 3-41 Settings tab 2-96 Setup 3-4, 3-91 Single sign-on 2-85 Skip blank pages 2-31 SMB connection 2-117 Stamp repeat 2-51, 3-30 Stamp/composition 3-80 Stamp/composition tab 2-106 Staple 2-33, 3-18 System environment 1-4

Т

Thin line support *2-67* Toner save *2-64*, *3-44* Transparency interleave *2-57*, *3-38*

U

Uninstall *2-111*, *2-127*, *3-82* USB connection *2-125* USB memory *5-4*

W

Watermark *2-41* Web service connection *2-123* Windows *2-3*

Ζ

Zoom 2-21

8.2 Index by button

Α

Administrative Settings *7-9* Administrator Settings *7-3* Auto Delete Secure Document *7-6*

В

Banner Printing 6-8 Basic Settings 6-4

С

Copy Guard 7-15

D

Default Function Permission 7-10 Default Operation Selection 7-11 Delete Secure Print Documents 7-6 Driver Password Encryption Setting 7-15

Н

Header/Footer Settings 7-8

ID & Print Delete after Print Setting 7-7 ID & Print Delete Time 7-7 ID & Print Operation Settings 7-10 ID & Print Settings 7-10

L

Layout - Combination 6-7

0

OOXML Print Settings 6-7 OpenAPI Settings 7-12 Output Settings 7-5 Output Tray Settings 7-5

Ρ

Paper Setting 6-5 Password Copy 7-15 PCL Settings 6-6 Print Data Capture 7-14 Print Reports 6-8 Print without Authentication 7-11 Print/Fax Output Settings 7-5 Printer Settings 6-4, 7-11 PS Setting 6-6

S

Secure Print Only 7-15 Security Details 7-14 Security Settings 6-7, 7-13 Shift Output Each Job 7-5 Stamp Settings 7-7 System Connection 7-12 System Settings 7-4

T

TIFF Image Paper Setting 6-8

U

User Authentication Settings 7-9 User Authentication/Account Track 7-8 User Box Settings 7-6 User Name List 7-10 User Settings 6-3 Utility 6-3